

Landesbibliothek Oldenburg

Digitalisierung von Drucken

The History Of Hindostan; From The Earliest Account Of Time, To The Death Of Akbar; Translated From The Persian Of Mahummud Casim Ferishta Of Delhi

Together With A Dissertation Concerning the Religion and Philosophy of
the Brahmins ; With An Appendix, Containing the History of the Mogul
Empire, from its Decline in the Reign of Mahummud Shaw, to the present
Times ; In Two Volumes

Ferishta, Mahummud Casim

London, 1768

Part III. The History of the EMpire of Delphi, from the Accession of Cuttub
to the Throne, to the Invasion of Timur.

urn:nbn:de:gbv:45:1-2463

P A R T III.

The History of the EMPIRE OF DELHI, from
the Accession of CUTTUB to the Throne, to
the Invasion of TIMUR.

S E C T I O N I.

The Reign of Sultan CUTTUB UL DIEN ABIEK.

A. D. 1205.
Higer. 602.
Cuttub ul
dien Abiek,

SULTAN Cuttub ul dien Abiek, was of a brave and virtuous disposition, open and liberal to his friends, and courteous and affable to strangers. In the art of war and government he was inferior to none, nor was he a mean proficient in literature.

In his childhood he was brought from Turkestan to Nishapoor, and there sold by a merchant, to Cafi Fuchur ul dien ben Abdu, AziziKufi, who, finding that heaven had endued him with a great genius, sent him to school, where he made a wonderful progress in the Persian and Arabic languages, and in all the polite arts and sciences.

I

But



But his patron and master dying suddenly, he was sold as part of his estate, by his relations, and bought by a rich merchant, for a great sum of money, and presented for sale to Sultan Shab ul dien. The Sultan purchased him, and called his name Abiek, from having his little finger broke. He behaved himself in such a becoming and ^{his rise,} assiduous manner, that he soon attracted the notice of his prince, and daily gained confidence and favour. One night the Sultan kept a magnificent festival at court, and ordered a liberal distribution of presents and money to be made among his servants. Abiek par-^{generosity,} took largely of his munificence, but had no sooner retired, than he divided his share among his companions. The Prince having heard of this circumstance, asked him the cause, and Abiek, kissing the earth, replied; "That all his wants were amply supplied by his Majesty's bounty. He had therefore no desire of burthening himself with ^{affability,} superfluities, his favour being a certain independence." This answer so pleased the King, that he immediately gave him an office near his person, and in a little time, was so satisfied with his diligence and capacity, that he appointed him master of the horse. ^{capacity,}

When the princes of Ghor, Ghizni and Bamia had drawn their forces towards Chorrañan, in order to expel the Shaw, Sultan of Charizm, from that province, Abiek went out with a detachment to forage on the banks of the Murgaab. He was there surrounded by a numerous party of the enemy. But though he did the utmost ^{and valour,} justice to valour, he was, after the loss of most of his men, taken prisoner, and carried to Charizm Shaw, who put him in chains. But the Shaw being defeated, Abiek was left in this manner, sitting upon a camel in the field, and carried to his victorious master; who pitying his condition, received him with great kindness.

In the year 588, when the Sultan took revenge of his enemies the Hindoos for the defeat they had given him, he upon his return, appointed



Made gover-
nor in Hin-
dostan,

and besieges
Delhi.

Delhi taken.

Cuttub de-
feats the Jits.

In great fa-
vour with the
Sultan.

Defeats the
Raja of Bera-
ris.

appointed Cuttub ul dien Abiek, to the chief command of the army left to protect his conquest. In discharge of this duty, Cuttub took possession of many districts around, and reduced the fort of Merat. He also drew his army towards Delhi, and invested it. But the garrison, finding that their own numbers triply exceeded the besiegers, marched out of the place, and drew up in order of battle, which was gladly accepted by Abiek. When the slaughter became great on both sides, and the river Jumna was discoloured with blood, the Rajaputs were, at length, put to flight, taking protection within their walls. The garrison, after a desperate siege, were at last obliged to capitulate.

In the year 589, the Jits, who were subject to the Raja of Narwalla, advanced with an army to besiege Haffi. Cuttub ul dien Abiek marched with his forces to protect it, and obliging them to raise the siege, pursued them to their own frontiers. In the year following, he crossed the Jumna, and took the fort of Kole by assault. He found there a thousand fine horses, and much spoil, and being informed of Sultan Shab ul dien's expedition towards Kinnoge, he thought proper to proceed as far as Peshawir, to meet him, presenting him with a hundred fine horses, and two great elephants, one of which carried a chain of gold, and the other a chain of silver. He mustered there, before the Sultan, fifty thousand horse, and was honoured with an honorary dress, and with the command of the van of the royal army.

With the van he defeated the Raja of Benaris, who, upon seeing his army retreat, pushed forward his elephant, in despair, against his enemy; but Cuttub ul dien, who excelled in archery, sunk an arrow in the ball of his eye, which brought him down from his elephant to the ground. It is said that the number of slain was so great, that the body of the Raja for a long time could not be found

by



by his friends, who were permitted to search for it. But, at last, he was discovered by his teeth, which, happening to be bad, were supplied by artificial ones, fixed in by golden wedges and wires.

Sultan Shab ul dien, following with the body of the army, entered the city of Benaris, and took possession of the country, as far as the boundaries of Bengal, without opposition. He broke down all the idols, and loaded four thousand camels with the most valuable spoils.

Cuttub ul dien presented the King with above three hundred elephants, taken from the Raja of Benaris. The riders had a signal given them to make the elephants SELAM * the King at once, which they all did except one white elephant. This animal was esteemed an inestimable curiosity. But upon this occasion, though extremely tractable at other times, had almost killed his rider, when he endeavoured to force him to pay his obedience.

A white elephant.

The King, when he was setting out for Ghizni, sent the white elephant back, in a present to Cuttub ul dien, and adopted him his son in his letter. Cuttub, ever afterwards till his death, rode the white elephant; and when he died, the affectionate animal pined away with visible sorrow, and expired the third day after. This was the only white elephant of which we have ever heard in Hindostan; but it is said, that the King of Pegu keeps always two white elephants, and that, when one of them dies, he issues out an order over all his dominions, to search the woods for another to supply his place. Cuttub ul dien, after the departure of the King, remained some days at Assi, where the Raja's treasure was found. He then returned to Delhi, and there received advice that Himrage Rajaput was marching down from the mountains of Abugur, and had driven Gola, the Raja of Ajmere, towards Rintimpore, and that Chitter

Cuttub ul dien adopted by the Sultan.

Cuttub defeats the general of Himrage,

* That is to fall upon their knees.

Rai,



And Him-
rage himself

Rai, Himrage's general, was marching with another army, towards Delhi, before which he soon arrived, and began to destroy the country. Cuttub ul dien marched out to chastise him, and separating twenty thousand horse from the rest of his army, he set out in front, and engaging the enemy, put them to flight. Chitter Rai, some days after, rallying his defeated army, retreated towards Ajmere, and was pursued all the way by the conqueror. Himrage being joined by his general, in confidence of his superior numbers, formed his army in order of battle. When they came to blows, he distinguished himself by his bravery, as well as by his conduct; but, being slain, his army took the way of infamy before them. Thus Ajmere was restored to the Mahommedan government, and was afterwards ruled by their laws.

ravaged the
territory of
Narwalla.

In the year 590, Cuttub turned his arms towards Narwalla, and Setwan, the general of Bimdeo, who was encamped under the walls, fled upon his approach. But being pursued, he drew up his army, and fought till he lost his life, and then his army resumed their flight. Bimdeo, upon intelligence of this defeat, fled from his dominions, and Cuttub ul dien ravaged the country at leisure, and found much spoil. He marched from thence to the fort of Hassi, which he repaired, then having visited Koram, returned to Delhi.

He in the mean time received advice, from the governor of the districts near Rintimpore, that the brother of the Raja of Ajmere, who lived in the hills, was marching down with an army to invade him. This obliged Cuttub ul dien to move immediately to his relief. The enemy, upon hearing this, fled; and Cuttub paid a visit to Raja Gola, who entertained him magnificently, and at his departure, presented him with some fine jewels, and two melons of gold. When he had settled the country, he again returned to Delhi,
from



from whence he wrote to the King a particular account of his conquests, which so pleased Sultan Shab ul dien, that he ordered his attendance at Ghizni, for which place he sat out, and was received with every demonstration of joy and respect.

Sent for to
Ghizni.

Cuttub ul dien, some time after, obtained leave to return to his government, and on his way, married the daughter of Sultan Tage ul dien, of Kirman, making a magnificent rejoicing upon the occasion, when he returned to Delhi. He soon after marched his army to the siege of the fort of Biana, and, when he was on his way, he heard that Shab ul dien had taken the rout of Hindostan. To shew his respect for the Sultan, Cuttub returned back as far as Hassi to meet him. Both returned to Biana, besieged and took the place, which the Sultan submitted to the command of Tughril, one of his particular and trusty slaves. They then took the rout of Gualier, where the Raja Shilkuman agreed to pay tribute, and bought peace with a great sum of ready money, and with jewels. The Sultan, immediately after these transactions, returned to Ghizni, leaving Cuttub ul dien viceroy of all the conquered provinces of Hindostan.

In conjuncti-
on with the
Sultan,

reduces Biana

and Gualier.

About this time news arrived that the Rajas of the Rajaputs had entered into an alliance with the Raja of Narwalla, and had formed a design to recover Ajmere from the Mahommedans. The troops of Cuttub ul dien being dispersed over the provinces, he was forced to march against the Rajaputs, with what small part of the army lay in Delhi, to prevent their junction with the forces of Narwalla; but he was defeated, received six wounds, and was often dismounted, yet he fought like a man who had made death his companion. Forced at last, by his own friends, to abandon the field, he was carried in a litter to Ajmere.

Marches
against the
Rajaputs,

and is defeat-
ed,

Tittura, chief of the Rajaputs, rejoicing at this victory, joined the forces of Narwalla, and sat down before Ajmere. Intelligence of

and besieged
in Ajmere.



The siege
raised by the
Ghiznians.

Overthrows
the Hindoos.

Marches to
Guzerat.

this unfortunate event, coming to Sultan Shab ul dien, he sent a great force from Ghizni, to the relief of Cuttub. Ajmere held out till the arrival of the Ghiznians, who obliged the enemy to raise the siege. Cuttub ul dien pursued them to Narwalla, in the year 593, taking in his way the forts of Tilli and Buzule. He there received advice that Walin and Daraparis Rajaputs, in alliance with the Raja of Narwalla, were encamped near the fort of Abugur, to guard the passes into Guzerat. Cuttub notwithstanding the difficulties of the road, and disadvantages of ground, resolved to attack them, which he did, with such bravery and conduct, that, having trodden down their ranks, above fifty thousand of the enemy, with their blood, tempered the dust of the field. Twenty thousand were taken prisoners, and an immense spoil fell into his hands.

When he had given his army some respite from slaughter and fatigue, he pursued his rout into Guzerat, and ravaged that country without further opposition, taking the city of Narwalla, where an Omrah with a strong garrison was left. He then returned to Delhi, by the way of Ajmere, and sent a great quantity of jewels and gold, and also many slaves to the Sultan at Ghizni, and divided the remainder among his trusty partners in the glories of the field.

In the year 599, he mustered his forces and marched to the siege of Calinger, where he was met by the Raja of that country, whom he defeated; and dismounting his cavalry, began to besiege him in his fort. The Raja seeing himself hard pressed, offered Cuttub ul dien the same tribute and presents which his ancestors had formerly paid to Sultan Mamood. The proposal was accepted, but the Vizier, who wanted to hold out without coming to any terms, found means to make away with the Raja, while the presents were preparing to be sent. The flag of hostility was again hoisted upon the fort, and the siege recommenced. The place, however, was in a short time reduced,



reduced, on account of the drying up of a spring upon that hill whereon the fort stood, and which supplied the garrison with water. ^{Takes Calger.} There is a tradition among the natives of the place, that the above fountain always dries up upon the discharging the artillery of the place. This story may possibly, from a natural cause, have some foundation. But we are rather tempted to believe, that the present drying up of this spring was owing to the increase of inhabitants, and the thirst occasioned by hard duty; for, besides the garrison, Cuttub ul dien found there fifty thousand male and female.

The plunder of this city was very great, in gold, jewels and precious effects. Cuttub then marched to the city of Mhoba, the capital of the Raja of Calpee. He also took that place, together with Budafo, between the rivers Jumna and Ganges. Mahummud Bucht Ear Chillige, who had been appointed governor of Behar, came at this time to pay him a visit, laying rich presents at his feet, and Cuttub having entertained him magnificently, returned to Delhi. ^{Takes Mhoba and Budafo.}

When Sultan Shab ul dien, after his defeat in Turkestan, returned to Hindostan, he was joined by Cuttub ul dien, by whose valour and fidelity he defeated the Gickers in several actions, and recovered his fallen glory. When matters were peaceably settled in this quarter, he returned to his government; and Sultan Shab ul dien, upon his way to Ghizni, was inhumanly assassinated by the Gickers. Shab ul dien's nephew, Yeas ul dien Mamood ascended the throne of Ghor, and upon his accession sent all the ensigns of royalty, a throne, an umbrella, standards, drums, and the title of Sultan or Prince to Cuttub ul dien, desirous of retaining him in his interest, as he was by no means able to oppose his power. ^{Joins Shab ul dien against the Gickers.}



A. D. 1205.
Higer. 602.
Raised to the spect,
Empire.

Lahore taken.

Retaken by
Cuttub, who
is crowned at
Ghizni.

Cuttub turns
indolent and
luxurious.

Expelled
from Ghizni.

He dies.

Sultan Cuttub ul dien received those dignities with a proper re-
spect, at Lahore, where he ascended the throne in the year 602, upon
the 18th of Zicaat; returning from thence in a few days to Delhi.
In the mean time, Taje ul dien Eldoze marched an army from
Ghizni, with an intention to take Lahore, which he effected by the
treachery of the governor, whom he afterwards turned out. Sultan
Cuttub ul dien marched to dispute the point with Taje ul dien, as
soon as he received intelligence at Delhi of this transaction. In the
year 603, the flames of war began to ascend between them, while
bravery on both sides became apparent. Taje ul dien at length was
beat out of the city, and obliged to fly towards Kirman. Sultan
Cuttub ul dien pursued him as far as Ghizni, in which city he was
again crowned, taking that kingdom into his own hands.

Cuttub after this, unaccountably gave himself up to wine and pleasure,
till the citizens of Ghizni, disgusted with his luxury and indolence,
sent privately to Taje ul dien Eldoze, acquainting him of the King's
negligence, and intreating his return. Taje ul dien, upon this,
recruiting an army with all secrecy and expedition, advanced towards
Ghizni, and in a manner surprized the King, who had no intelli-
gence of his design till the day before his arrival. It was now too
late to put himself in a proper state of defence, and he was obliged
to abandon that kingdom and retire to Lahore. He then became
sensible of his weakness, repented of his evil habits, and exercised
himself in the practice of justice, temperance and morality. He re-
gulated his kingdoms according to the best laws of policy and wis-
dom till his death, in the year 607; which happened by a fall from
his horse in a match at ball, which adverse parties endeavoured to
carry off on the point of their spears.

His reign, properly speaking, was only four years, though he
enjoyed all the state and dignities of a King, for upwards of twenty;

if



if we reckon from his taking of Delhi, when he may be said to have become King of Hindostan; though he assumed only the title of commander in chief for his patron Shab ul dien. He was certainly an accomplished warrior, and had nearly equalled the greatest heroes in fame, had not his loss of the kingdom of Ghizni tarnished his glory. He was famous for his great generosity all over the east, for which he got the surname of Lack Buksh, or bestower of Lacks. When a man is praised for generosity in Hindostan, they say to this day, "he is as generous as Sultan Cuttub ul dien."

A. D. 1210.
Higer. 607.

His character.

SECTION II.

The Reign of TAJE UL DIEN ELDOZE.

SULTAN Shab ul dien, during his reign, having no children of his own excepting one daughter, had taken a particular pleasure in educating Turkish slaves, whom he afterwards adopted as his children. Four of those slaves besides Cuttub ul dien became great princes, of whom the present Taje ul dien Eldoze was one. The King having observed him to be a youth of genius, advanced him gradually, till at last he bestowed upon him the government of Kirma and Shinoran, which lay between Ghizni and Hindostan. His situation gave him an opportunity of frequently entertaining his prince, upon his expeditions to and from that country, which he always did with great magnificence and festivity, making presents to all the King's attendants.

Taje ul dien's
rise.

Sultan Shab ul dien, in his last expedition, favoured Taje ul dien so much, that he bestowed upon him the black standard of the kingdom



Ascends the
throne of
Ghizni.

kingdom of Ghizni, by this intimating his will, that he should succeed to that throne. But upon the death of that monarch, the Turkish Omrahs were desirous that Sultan Yeas ul dien ben Sham should come from Ghor and reign at Ghizni. Yeas ul dien being a man of an indolent disposition declined it; and said that he was content with the throne of his ancestors. He, however, assumed the imperial title, proclaimed Taje ul dien King of Ghizni, and was content to maintain the appearance of that power which he would not, or rather durst not enforce.

Charizm
Shaw takes
Ghizni.

The first thing Taje ul dien Eldoze did after his accession, was to invade Punjab and Lahore, as we have seen in the former reign. He was defeated by Cuttub ul dien Abiek, and in consequence lost his own kingdom, which, however, he soon after recovered. He afterwards, in conjunction with Sultan Yeas ul dien Mamood, sent an army to Herat, which they conquered, as also a great part of Seistan, but making peace with the prince of that country, they returned. On the way, making war upon Charizm Shaw, they were both defeated, and the conqueror pursuing his fortune, took Ghizni, while Eldoze retired to Kirma.

Eldoze de-
feated and
taken,
dies.

The Sultan finding the northern troops too hard for him, recruited an army, and marched some time after the death of Cuttub ul dien Abiek, with a view to conquer Hindostan. But, after reducing some of the northern provinces, he was defeated near Delhi by Sultan Shumfi ul dien, and being taken, died in confinement. The time of his reign was nine years.

As we have already given the history of two of Shab ul dien's slaves who arrived at the imperial dignity, it may not be improper here to say something of Tughril, who raised himself from the same low situation.



Tughril was an Omrah of some repute in the service of Shab ul dien, brave, and of a virtuous disposition. They relate, that when Shab ul dien Mahummud took the fort of Biana, he gave the command of it to Tughril, and proceeded himself to Gualier, as we have seen before. But after he left Hindostan, Tughril continued to infest the country about Gualier; the King having told him at his departure, that if he conquered the place, he would confirm him in the government of it. When he found that this manner of war had no effect, as they always found some opportunity of supplying the place, he ordered small forts to be built all round, which he garrisoned, and by this means the place was effectually blockaded. Yet it held out for near a whole year, when being distressed for provisions, they sent an embassy privately to Sultan Cuttub ul dien Abiek to come and take possession of the place, for they had conceived an implacable resentment against Tughril. The Sultan accordingly sent his troops to seize upon Gualier; upon which, war had almost ensued between him and Tughril. Death however interfering, put an end to the dispute; for at this juncture, Tughril suddenly expired. The actions of the other two princes, formerly slaves to Shab ul dien, will be seen in the history of Sind and Punjab, to which they more properly belong.

Tughril a
brave and vir-
tuous Omrah.

SECTION III.

The Reign of Sultan ARAM SHAW, ben Sultan Cuttub ul dien Abiek.

AFTER the death of Cuttub, his son Aram Shaw mounted the throne of Delhi; but was no ways equal to the government of so great an empire.

Aram Shaw, a
weak prince.

Nasir



A. D. 1210.
Higer. 607.

Several provinces dis-
membered
from the em-
pire.

Nafir ul dien Cabaja, one of the adopted slaves of Shab ul dien, marched with an army towards Sind, which he conquered, as also Moulton, Otch, Shinoran and other places. Another slave, Achtiar ul dien Muhummud of Chillige, possessed himself of the kingdom of Bengal and asserted his own independence. At the same time, several Rajas blew up the flames of rebellion in many parts of the empire.

He is defeat-
ed and de-
posed.

Upon these misfortunes Amir Alli Ismaiel, Amir Dad Delhi, and all the Omrahs became discontented, sending a person to call Malleck Altumsh, who was the son in law and adopted son of Cuttub ul dien, and then governor of Budaoon *, to ascend the throne. Malleck Altumsh accordingly marched with his army to Delhi, and by the assistance of the faction within, easily reduced it. Aram Shaw, afraid of trusting himself in his capital, had previously withdrawn into the country, recruited a fine army, and advanced to give Malleck Altumsh battle. A warm engagement ensued in fight of the city. Aram Shaw lost the victory and his empire, which he had enjoyed scarce one year.

SECTION IV.

The Reign of SHUMSE UL DIEN ALTUMSH.

The family of
Altumsh.

WE are told that Altumsh was originally a nobleman of Chitta, whose father's name was Elim Chan, a great and famous general. But in his youth, being the favourite of his father, he was envied by the rest of his brothers. They therefore determined

* The country beyond the Ganges, N. E. from Delhi, now possessed by the Rohil'as.

to



to get rid of him, and as they were out one day hunting, they stript ^{He is sold as a slave.} him, and sold him to a company of travelling merchants for a slave. The merchants carried him to Bochara, and sold him to one of the relations of Sider Jehan prince of that country, from whom he received a liberal education.

Upon the death of his master he was again exposed to sale, and bought by a merchant, who sold him to another who carried him to Ghizni. Mahummud Shaw heard at Ghizni of Altumsh's beauty and talents, but could not agree with the merchant about his price. He was therefore carried back to Bochara, as none durst buy him, on account of the King's displeasure, till Sultan Cuttub ul dien Abiek ob- ^{Purchased by Cuttub ul dien.} taining his leave, made that purchase at Delhi, whither he had invited the merchant, for fifty thousand pieces of silver. Cuttub, at the same time, bought another slave whom he called Tagage, and appointed him afterwards, governor of Tibberhind, where he was slain in the battle between Cuttub ul dien and Eldoze.

Altumsh, in the mean time, was made master of the chace, and afterwards rose to such favour, that he became the adopted son of ^{Altumsh adopted by Cuttub.} his prince, Cuttub ul dien, and was advanced to the government of Gualier and Birren, and from thence to the viceroyship of Budaoon. He accompanied Cuttub in his war against the Gickers, and greatly distinguished himself in bravery and zeal for the service. He killed in one action, with the troops of Budaoon, upwards of ten thousand of the enemy. This behaviour so pleased the King, that he declared him free, and made him many honorary presents.

Thus by degrees Altumsh rose, till he was created Amir ul Om- ^{Made captain general of the Empire.} rah, or captain general of the empire; and married the daughter of Sultan Cuttub ul dien; and upon his death, as we have before re-

VOL. I.

A a

lated,



A. D. 1210.
Higer, 607.
Accedes to
the throne,

lated, he advanced against the capital, and expelling Aram Shaw from the throne in the year 607, declared himself Emperor by the title of Shumse ul dien Altumsh.

Deserted by
some Omrahs,

Defeats them.

Defeats and
takes Sultan
Eldoze.

Upon his accession he was acknowledged by many chiefs and princes; but some of his generals taking disgust, went off with the greater part of his Turkish horse, which were the flower of his army. They joined themselves with other malecontents, and advanced with a great force towards Delhi. They were met before the city by Shumse ul dien and defeated, their chief general Firoch Shaw being killed, and the rest so closely pursued, that in a short time they were all either killed or taken, which for that time established Altumsh in peace. But soon after the governor of the fort of Gollore, whose name was Avice, rebelled and refused to pay the revenues of that country. This obliged the King to march and reduce him to obedience. Sultan Eldoze of Ghizni, at this time sent him the ensigns of royalty, pretending to confirm Altumsh in the empire of Hindostan. But soon after, when Taje ul dien Eldoze himself was defeated by the troops of Charizm, and retired to Kirma and Shenoran, he turned his views towards the conquest of Hindostan. Eldoze seized upon the country of Punjaab and the city of Tannafar in the year 612, and endeavoured by his emissaries in the court of Shumse ul dien, to raise a faction in his own favour. Sultan Shumse ul dien, in the mean time, drew together his forces, and advancing towards him, they fought on the confines of Tirowri, about seventy crores from Delhi. Taje ul dien was defeated, as before related, and with many of his Omrahs, taken and imprisoned in Budaon, where he died a natural death, according to some, but according to others, was poisoned.

In the year 614, Sultan Shumse ul dien, engaged Malleck Nasir ul dien Cabaja, who was also son in law to Cuttab ul dien, upon the



the banks of Chinaab, where Altumsh proved victorious. The governor of Chillige, the year following, being defeated by Nasir ul dien, fled for protection to Altumsh, who taking part in his quarrel, marched against Nasir ul dien, and a second time overthrew him, recovering the countries lost by the Viceroy of Chillige, upon which he himself returned to Delhi.

A. D. 1217.
Higer. 614.

In the year 618, Sultan Jellal ul dien Charizm Shaw being defeated in the north, by the great conqueror Chingez Chan, retreated towards Lahore, where Sultan Shumse ul dien opposed him with all his forces. This obliged the brave though unfortunate Jellal ul dien to retreat towards Sind, where he was opposed by Nasir ul dien, who defeated him and pursued him by the way of Kutch and Muckeran.

Chingez
Chan.

In the year 622, Sultan Shumse ul dien led his army towards Behar and Lucknouti, where he obliged Sultan Yeas ul dien of Chillige, then prince of Bengal, whose history we shall see in its proper place *, to pay him tribute and allegiance. He struck the currency in his own name, and appointing his own son Nasir ul dien to the government of Lucknouti, which comprehended all the kingdom of Bengal, he left Yeas ul dien in the government of Behar, and then returned to Delhi. But soon after, war broke out between Nasir ul dien prince of Bengal, and Yeas ul dien of Behar. The latter was defeated and slain; Nasir ul dien taking possession of his principality and treasure, out of which he sent ample presents to his friends at Delhi.

Altumsh re-
duces Bengal,

and Behar.

In the mean time, Sultan Shumse ul dien led out his forces against Nasir ul dien Cabaja, prince of Sind, who, unable to oppose him in the field, left a strong garrison in Outch, and returned himself to

Altumsh
marches a-
gainst Sind.

* The historian alludes to another work which he wrote concerning the transactions of the principalities of Hindostan.



A. D. 1225.
Hijer. 622.

which he re-
duces.

Backar. The Emperor detached Nizam ul Maluck Jinaidi with half the army in pursuit of Nasir ul dien, while with the other half, he himself laid siege to Outch, which he took in two months and twenty days. When the news of the fall of Outch reached Nasir ul dien Cabaja, he sent his son Alla ul dien Byram Shaw to intreat the Emperor for peace. The terms were not settled when news was brought that Cabaja had been obliged by Nizam ul Mulluck to attempt to cross the river, and that he was unhappily drowned. Then the whole country submitted to the imperial power. Altumsh then drew his forces towards the fort of Rintimpore, which he besieged and took.

Reduces Se-
walic,

In the year 624, he marched towards the fort of Mendu, which he reduced with all the country of Sewalic. At this time, Amir Ruhani, the most learned and most famous poet and philosopher of that age, fled from Bochara, that city being taken by Chingez Chan, and took protection at Delhi, where he wrote many excellent pieces. The Emperor, at the same time, had an embassy from the Arabian Princes, with the royal robes of the Caliphat, which he assumed with joy, making a great festival, and distributing rich presents.

Quells dis-
turbances in
Bengal.

In the same year, he received intelligence of the death of Nasir ul dien, his eldest son prince of Lucknouti, which threw him into mourning and sorrow. He soon after conferred the title upon his younger son, whom he carried with him to Lucknouti in the year 627, to invest him with the government, which had run into confusion, after the death of the former prince. Having entirely settled this country in peace, he left Eaz ul Muluck to superintend the kingdom, and returned with his son to Delhi.

He formed a design, in the year 629, to reduce the fort of Gu-
lier, which had, during the reign of Aram Shaw, fallen into the
hands



hands of the Hindoos. He accordingly besieged it for a whole year, when the garrison being reduced to great streights, the governor, Deo Mull, made his escape in the night, and the troops capitulated, but about three hundred of them, for treacherous behaviour, were punished.

A. D. 1231.
Higer. 629.
Reduces
Gualier.

After the reduction of this place, he marched his army towards Malava, and reducing the fort of Belsay, took the city of Ugein, where he destroyed the magnificent and rich temple of Makal*, formed upon the same plan with that of Sumnat, which had been building three hundred years, and was surrounded by a wall one hundred cubits in height. The image of Bickermagit, who had been formerly Raja of this country, and so renowned that the people of Hindostan date their time from his death, as also that of Makal, both of stone, with many other figures of brass, he ordered to be carried to Delhi, and broken at the door of the great mosque.

Destroys the
magnificent
temple of
Makal.

After his return from this expedition, he drew his army again towards Moulton; but this enterprize proved unsuccessful on account of his health. He fell sick on his march, which obliged him to return to Delhi, where he died on the 20th of Shaban, in the year 633. His vizier, towards the latter end of his reign, was Fuchur ul Muluck Altumsh dieg. Affami, who had been formerly vizier of Bagdat, for thirty years. He was renowned for wisdom and learning, but had left that court on account of some disgust, and travelled to Delhi, where he was deemed a great acquisition, and honoured with the vizarit. The most famous for letters in this reign, was Noor ul dien Mahummud Ufi, who wrote the Jame ul Hickaiat, a valuable collection of histories and other books. The Reign of Sultan Shumse ul dien was twenty-six years.

* MA signifies Great in the Indian language; and KAL Time, or sometimes Death.

SECTION



SECTION V.

The Reign of Ruckun ul dien FEROSE SHAW ben Sultan Shumse ul dien Altumsh.

A. D. 1235.
Higer. 633.
Feroze Shaw.

IN the year 625, his father appointed Feroze Shaw governor of Budaoon, and, after his reduction of Gualier, gave him the regency of Lahore. He chanced, at the emperor's death, to be at Delhi on a visit, and immediately ascended the throne. The Omrahs made their offerings, and swore allegiance; while the poets of the age vied with one another in his praise, for which they received liberal donations.

a weak and
dissolute
Prince.

But, when he acquired the imperial dignity, he spread the flowery carpets of luxury, and withdrew his hand from the toils of state. He expended his father's treasure upon dancing women, comedians, and musicians, and left the affairs of government to the management of his mother Shahe Turkaan. This woman had been a Turkish slave, and now became a monster of cruelty, murdering all the women of Shumse ul dien's Haram, to gratify her inhuman hatred to them, as also the youngest of that Emperor's sons.

Cruelty of
his mother.

Several Om-
rahs rebel.

The minds of the people began to be filled with disgust, and Yeas ul dien Mahummud Shaw, the younger brother of the Sultan, and governor of Oud, intercepted the revenues from Bengal, and began to assert independance. At the same time Malleck Ez ul dien Mahummud, Suba of Budaoon, Malleck ul dien Chani, Suba of Lahore, Malleck Ez ul dien Cabire Chan, Suba of Moulton, and Malleck Seif ul dien Kugi, governor of Hassi, entering into a confederacy, exalted their standards of hostility against the Emperor. Fe-
roze



rose Shaw collected a vast army, and marched to Kilogurry, where he was deserted by his vizier Nizam Mahummud Junedi, with part of his army. The vizier went towards Kole, where he joined Malleck Meaz ul dien Mahummud Sallar. They from thence proceeded to Lahore, where they were joined by the Princes of these provinces.

A. D. 1235.
Higer. 633.
Perose Shaw
marches
against the
rebels.

The Emperor, in the mean time, continued his march towards them, and when he reached Munforpoor, seven of his principal Omrahs deserted him, and retired with their troops to Delhi. There they advanced Sultana Rizia, the eldest daughter of Shumse ul dien, to the throne, and imprisoned the Emperor's mother.

Deserted by
his army.

When this news reached the emperor, he hastened back with his army towards Delhi, and having reached Kilogurry, Sultana Rizia, on the 18th of Ribbi ul Awil, in the year 634, advanced against him. He was delivered up into her hands, and died in confinement some time after; so that he reigned only six months and twenty-eight days.

Sultana Rizia
raised to the
throne.

SECTION VI.

The Reign of MALLEKE DORAN SULTANA RIZIA.

THIS Princess was adorned with every qualification required in the ablest Kings; and the strictest scrutineers of her actions, could find in her no fault but that she was a woman. In the time of her father, she entered deeply into the affairs of government, which disposition he encouraged, finding she had a remarkable talent in politics. In that year in which he took the fort of Gualier, he appointed her regent in his absence. When he was asked by the Omrahs, why

An excellent
Princess.



A. D. 1236.
Higer. 634.

why he appointed his daughter to such an office in preference to so many of his sons, he replied, " that he saw his sons gave themselves up to wine, women, gaming, and the worship of the wind †; that therefore he thought the government too weighty for their shoulders to bear; and that Rizia, though a woman, had a man's head and heart, and was better than twenty such sons."

The rebels
at Lahore
march to-
wards Delhi.

Sultana Rizia, upon her accession, changing her apparel, assumed the imperial robes, and every day gave public audience from the throne, revising and confirming the laws of her father, which had been abrogated in the last reign, and distributing justice with an equal hand. In the mean time the vizier Malleck Nizam ul Muluck Mahummud Junedi, and the confederate Omrahs, who had met at Lahore, advanced with their armies to Delhi, and encamping without the city, commenced hostilities. They, at the same time, sent circular letters to all the Omrahs of the empire, to draw them from their allegiance. This news reaching Malleck Nuserit, Suba of Oud, he collected his forces, and hastened to the relief of the empress; but when he had crossed the Ganges, he was engaged by the confederates, defeated, and taken prisoner, in which condition he soon died.

They dis-
perse and are
punished.

The Empress found means, in her own policy, to sow dissention among the confederates; till, finding themselves in a dangerous situation, they retreated each to his own country, while some of them, being pursued by the Empress, Malleck Seif ul dien Kugi and his brothers, were taken and put to death, as also Malleck Alla ul dien Chani, who suffered the same fate, the vizier having escaped to the hills of Sirmore, where he died.

Sultana Rizia
settles the
Empire.

The prosperity of the Sultana daily gaining ground, she gave the vizarit to Chaja Mohezzib Ghiznavi, who had been deputy to the

† Flattery.

former



former vizier, with the title of Nizam ul Muluck, and the chief command of her forces to Seif ul dien Abiek, with the title of Kilick Chan. Mallek Kabir Chan Eaz, having subjected himself to her authority, was confirmed in the regency of Lahore, while the countries of Bengal, Dewil, Sind, Moulton, and others, were also confirmed to their respective Subahs, on their promise of future obedience.

In the mean time Seif ul dien Abiek, her general, died, and Cut-tub ul dien Hassen, being appointed to succeed him, was sent with the army to raise the siege of Rintimpore, which was then invested by the Hindoo Rajas. But at the approach of the imperial forces, they raised the siege and retreated. After Hassen's departure for Rintimpore, Malleck Achtiar ab Tiggi was advanced to the dignity of Amir Hajib, or lord of the privacy, and master of requests. Jemmal ul dien Eacoot Hubbafhi, gaining great favour with the empress, was also appointed Amir Achor, or Master of the Horse, from which station he was presently advanced to that of Amir ul Omrah, or Captain General of the Empire.

The nobles were greatly disgusted at this promotion, as the favourite was originally an Abassinian slave. The first who began openly to express his discontent, was Malleck Eaz ul dien, regent of Lahore, in the year 637, who threw off his allegiance, and began to recruit his army. The Empress collecting also her forces, marched out against him, and Eaz ul dien being disappointed by some of his confederates, was obliged to make every concession to obtain pardon. This he effected with so much art, that the Empress, upon her departure, either believing him to be her friend, or desirous of binding him over to her interest, by gratitude, continued him in his viceroyship, and added to it that of Moulton, which had been governed by Malleck Kirakush.



A. D. 1239.
Higer. 637.
The Suba of
Tiberhind
rebels.

A mutiny in
the Empress's
army.

She is depo-
sed.

Marches to
Delhi.

Defeated and
put to death.

In the same year Malleck Altunia, Suba of Tiberhind, exalted the hostile standard against the Empress, on account of her imprudent partiality to the Abassinian. The Empress, upon this intelligence, marched with her army towards Tiberhind, but, about half way, all the Turkish Omrahs in her army, mutinied with their forces.

A tumultuous conflict ensued, in which her Abassinian general was killed, and she herself seized and sent to the fort of Tiberhind. The army then returned to Delhi; where the Turkish Omrahs set up Moaz ul dien Byram Shaw, the son of Sultan Shumse ul dien, her brother.

In the mean time, Malleck Altunia, Suba of Tiberhind, having married the Empress, in a short time, by her influence, raised a great army of Gickers, Jits, and other nations, with many Omrahs of distinction, and marched with her towards Delhi. Sultan Byram Shaw upon this, sent Balin, son-in-law to Shumse ul dien, with his forces to oppose her. The two armies meeting near Delhi, an obstinate action ensued, in which the unfortunate Empress being defeated, fled to Tiberhind.

She some time after collected her scattered forces, and was soon in a condition to make another bold effort for her Empire. She advanced with a numerous army towards Delhi, but her forces being composed of the troops of Hindostan, were no ways a match for those of Turkestan, which chiefly composed the Emperor's army. Malleck Balin, who was again sent to oppose her, gave her another defeat at Keitel, the 4th of Rubbi ul Awil in the same year. She and her husband being taken in the pursuit, were inhumanly put to immediate death; while others relate, that they were both carried bound to Byram Shaw, who ordered them to be assassinated in prison. Thus died the Empress Rizia, deserving a better fate, after a reign of three years, six months, and six days.

SECTION



SECTION VII.

The Reign of Sultan Moaz ul dien BYRAM SHAW ben
Sultan Shumse ul dien Altumsh.

WHEN the Empress Rizia was prisoner in the fort of Tiber-
hind, Byram Shaw, upon Monday the 27th of Ramfan, in
the year 637, by consent of the Omrahs, ascended the throne of
Delhi, and confirmed all the laws and customs then in force. Mal-
leek Achtiar ul dien ab Tiggi, in conjunction with the vizier, Nizam
ul Muluck, by degrees took the whole government of the Empire
upon himself, taking the sister of the Emperor to wife, and mounting
an elephant upon guard, at his gate, which was an honour peculiar
to royalty.

This circumstance raised disgust and jealousy in the Emperor's
mind. He therefore ordered two Turkish slaves to put on the ap-
pearance of drunkenness, and endeavour to assassinate Malleek and
the vizier. Accordingly upon a certain day, these two Turks,
when the King gave public audience, pressed among the crowd, and
began to be very troublesome. Tiggi, who stood first in the rank of
Omrahs, went to turn them out. They drew their daggers, and
plunged them into his breast, then, running to the vizier, they gave
him two wounds; but he escaped through the crowd. The slaves
were immediately seized, and thrown into chains, but in a few
days after they were pardoned.

The vizier kept his bed for some days, on account of his wounds,
but, as soon as he recovered, he appeared again at court, and offici-
ated in his employ. Buddur ul dien Sunkir Rumi, who was then

B b 2

master



A. D. 1239.
Higer. 637.
Scheme to
supercede the
vizier.

master of requests, formed a scheme to supercede him. He, for this purpose, placed himself at the head of a powerful faction at court, and collecting the Omrahs together, and, among the rest, the vizier, at the house of Sudder ul Muluck, the chief justice, he began to concert with them a plan to bring about a revolution in the Empire. Sudder ul Muluck was secretly averse to the measure, and fearing that what was nominally meant against the vizier, should actually turn upon his master, he sent to the Emperor, and informed him of the whole affair. Sudder's messenger brought back with him a faithful servant of the King, in the habit of a fool, who might overhear the conversation with the vizier. The vizier, though he actually entered into the measures of the meeting, excused himself from attendance at that time.

The conspi-
rators punish-
ed.

The story of Sudder being confirmed by the person whom the Emperor sent to overhear the Omrahs, a body of cavalry were immediately dispatched to seize them; but they having had previous intelligence, dispersed themselves before the horse arrived. The next day Malleck Budir ul dien Sunkur, who was one of the principal conspirators, was sent to be Suba of Budaoon, while Cafi Jellal ul dien Kashani was turned out of his office. In a few months after, Sunkur and Muza were assassinated at Budaoon by the Emperor's emissaries, while Cafi Shumse ul dien was trod under foot by elephants.

A sedition
among the
troops.

Lahore taken
by Zingis
Chan.

These proceedings raised fear and apprehension in the bosom of every body, which being improved by the faction, there was a general sedition among the troops. In the mean time news arrived that the Moguls of Chingez Chan had invested Lahore upon the 16th of Jemmad ul Achir, in the year 639: that Malleck Kerakush, the viceroy of that place, finding his troops mutinous, had been obliged



obliged to fly in the night, and was actually on his way to Delhi; A. D. 1241.
Higer. 639. and that Lahore was plundered by the enemy, and the miserable inhabitants carried away prisoners.

The King, upon this urgent occasion, called a general council of state, in which it was determined to send Nizam ul Muluck, vizier, and Malleck ul dien Hassan Ghorî, vakeel of the Empire, with other Omrahs, to oppose the Moguls at Lahore with an army. When the imperial army advanced as far as the river Bea, where the town of Sultanpore now stands, the vizier, who was privately an enemy to the Emperor, began to depreciate his government to the Omrahs, and to sow the seeds of sedition in their minds. But that he might compleatly effect his purpose, he wrote a private letter to the Emperor, accusing them of disaffection, and begging he would either take the field himself, or send other Omrahs and more forces, for that those now with the army could not be depended upon, and that therefore nothing could be done against the enemy. Treachery of
the vizier.

The Emperor, though he had been forewarned of the treachery of his vizier in the late conspiracy, yet the artful man had so well extricated himself, and gained such confidence, that Byram Shaw, who was not blessed with much discernment, gave entire credit to this accusation, and sent him an order, importing, that they deserved death; at the same time recommending to him to keep them quiet till he should find the means of bringing them to condign punishment. This was what the crafty vizier wanted. He immediately produced the King's order, which kindled the Omrahs at once into rage, while he mislead them with respect to the accuser. He even pretended to be apprehensive for himself, and began to consult with them about the means of general security; and they all promised to support him. Attaches the
Omrahs to
his interest.

This



A. D. 1242.
Higer. 640.

The Emperor
dispatches
Ilaam to
quiet the
Omrahs.

Pelhi be-
sieged.

The Emperor
taken and
slain.

This news having reached the Emperor, he began to open his eyes, when too late, and in great perturbation hastened to the house of Shuh Ilaam, a venerable and learned Omrah, requesting him to set out for the camp, and endeavour, by proper representations, to bring over the disaffected Omrahs to their duty. Ilaam accordingly set out in private, but not being able to effect any thing, returned to Delhi. The Vizier, in the mean time, advanced with the army to the capital, which he besieged for three months and an half. Rebellion spreading at last among the citizens, the place was taken on the eighth of Zicaat, in the year 639. Sultan Moaz ul dien Byram Shaw was thrown into prison, where in a few days he came to a very tragical end, after a reign of two years one month and fifteen days.

The Moguls, in the mean time, plundered Punjaab and returned to Ghizni.

SECTION VIII.

The Reign of Sultan ALLA UL DIEN MUSAOOD SHAW,
the son of Ruckun ul dien Firoze Shaw.

Alla ul dien
mounts the
throne.

WHEN Byram Shaw had drank the cup of fate, Malleck Eaz ul dien Balin the elder raised a faction, and forcing his way into the palace, mounted the throne, and ordered himself to be proclaimed throughout the city. But the greater part of the princes and nobility, dissatisfied with his advancement, immediately took out Alla ul dien from his confinement in the white castle, and deposing the usurper, placed him upon the throne the same day in which
Balin



Balin had usurped it. Malleck Cuttub ul dien Haffin was made Vakeel of the empire *. Malleck Mohizib ul dien Nizam ul Muluck, Vizier, and Malleck Kirakush lord of requests.

The Vizier, who was a politic and ambitious man, still maintained an absolute power in the empire; but being of a haughty and oppressive disposition, he bore it with too high a hand among the nobles. They consequently began to combine against him, and in the month of Ribbi ul Awil, in the year 640, found means to assassinate him one day when he was hunting. The Vizier was conferred upon Sudder ul Muluck Nigim ul dien Abu Buker; and the younger Balin was made lord of the requests. Even Balin the elder was appointed viceroy of Nagore, Sind and Ajmere. The Subaship of Budaoon was given at the same time to Malleck Tage ul dien; and other provinces fell to various Omrahs, according to their rank and interest at court; and in general, peace and content seemed to diffuse themselves over the kingdom.

The Emperor, about this time, released his two uncles Nafir ul dien and Jellal ul dien, who had been imprisoned by Byram Shaw. He conferred upon the former the government of Barage, and to the latter, he gave that of Kinnoge. Tigga Chan was appointed Suba of Lucknouti, or Bengal.

In the year 642, an army of Mogul Tartars made an incursion into Bengal by the way of Chitta and Tibet. Sultan Alla ul dien sent towards Lucknouti Malleck Kira beg Timur Chan, to the aid of Tigga Chan, with a great army. The Moguls received a total defeat, but jealousy arising between Timur and Tigga Chan, they

* This office of Vakeel Sultanit, or Vakeel Mutuluck, was the first in the empire; his business was to issue all orders from the closet to the Vizier or other officers of state, who were to take measures for executing them.

proceeded



A.D. 1244. proceeded to open hostilities; and the Emperor ordered Tigha to
Higer. 642. resign the government to Timur, and to return to Delhi.

In the following year intelligence arrived that another army of Moguls, by the way of Kundiz and Talikaan, had entered Sind, and invested Outch. The Sultan immediately ordered forces to be mustered, and putting himself at their head, directed the imperial standard towards the Tartars. When he had reached the banks of the river Bea, they raised the siege and began to retreat; and the Sultan hearing that they had totally evacuated the country, returned to Delhi.

Expelled from
Sind.

Alla soon after gave himself up to wine and women, and exercised various modes of cruelty, injustice and oppression, despising all counsel, and placing the way of ruin before him. The Princes and Omrahs at length bound up their loins to hostility, having first privately sent for Nasir ul dien Mamood the Sultan's uncle from Barage. Mamood advanced with all the forces he could raise towards the capital. The Emperor was thrown into prison by the Omrahs, where he remained for life. He reigned four years, one month and one day.

The Emperor
deposed.

SECTION IX.

The Reign of Sultan NASIR UL DIEN MAMOOD ben Sultan Shumse ul dien Altumsh.

WE have already observed, that when the eldest son of Sultan Altumsh died in Lucknouti, he conferred the title and government of that principality upon his younger son Nasir ul dien Mamood.



but this was a nominal honour, Mamood being at that time too young ^{A. D. 1215. Higer. 643.} for such a charge. Upon his father's death he was confined by Shaha Turkaan, and remained in prison till he was released by Musaood Shaw, who gave him the government of Barage. During the time of his government he waged successful wars with the neighbouring Rajas, and rendered his province happy and flourishing. The fame of his justice and policy became to be noised abroad, which made ^{Mamood a wife, learned, and politic prince.} the Omrahs turn their eyes towards him in the late revolution. He was then placed upon the throne of his father, which, even laying aside his birth, his bravery, wisdom and learning, his other good qualiteis very much deserved to possess.

During the time of his imprisonment, he wrote for his livelihood, despising the Emperor's allowance. He often said in the days of his misfortune, that he who could not work for his bread did not deserve it. When he ascended the throne, he was the patron of learning, the protector of the people, and the friend of the poor. ^{An encourager of learning.} The poets of that age vied with one another for the prize, at his coronation, which was gained by Cafi Minhage, for his poem upon that occasion. This writer is also particularly famous for his valuable history called the Tibcaat Nazari.

The vizarit was now conferred upon Malleck Yeas ul dien Balin ^{The Vizarit conferred upon Balin.} the younger, who formerly, under the title of Chan Azim Anigh Chan, defeated the Sultana, and all the executive power put into his hands. Shere Chan, the Emperor's nephew, was appointed to the government of Lahore, Moulton, Batenize and Tibberhind, where he was ordered to keep a great standing army, to watch the motions of the Moguls, who now had possessed themselves of Cabul, Candahar, Ghizni, Balich and Herat.

It is said, that when Mamood appointed young Balin vizier, that ^{The Emperor's charge to Balin.} he told him, he trusted his own glory to his loyalty and conduct; therefore,



A. D. 1246.
Higer. 644.

therefore, to do nothing for which he could not answer to God, or that would stain his name with injustice towards his people, or ingratitude towards his king. The vizier faithfully promised his best, and exerted himself with such unwearied diligence in his office, regulated so well the business of the state, that nothing escaped his eye, or passed his particular inspection.

The Gickers
chastised.

In the month of Regib the King took the field, and turned his arms towards Moulton. He encamped for some time upon the banks of the Sodra; and making his vizier captain general, he sent him towards the mountains of Jehud, and the territories of Sind. Those countries were reduced, and the Emperor avenged himself upon the Gickers for their continual incursions, and for guiding the Moguls through their country into Hindostan. These offences were too great to be pardoned, and therefore he carried some thousands of every age and sex into captivity.

Refractory
Omrahs pu-
nished.

Some antient Omrahs who had Jagiers conferred on them in the provinces of Lahore and Moulton, had, for some time past, refused to supply their quotas to the army, for the maintainance of which, they held these estates. By the advice of the vizier, they were arrested and carried prisoners to Delhi. The King, however, gave their Jagiers to their sons or relations, upon the old military tenure. The country of Punjaab and Moulton were by these means effectually settled, and the King's authority firmly established.

Story of Alex-
ander the
Great.

Some authors inform us, that when Secunder * was on his way to Hindostan, some of his old generals, unwilling to proceed farther, began to draw their feet out of the circle of his obedience. The hero upon this, was thrown into great perplexity, not knowing how to proceed with them. In this dilemma he sent a messen-

* Alexander the Great.

ger



ger to Greece to advise with his old master Aristotile *, who, by A. D. 1247.
Higer. 645. reason of his age and infirmities, could not accompany him. When the sage read the letter, he carried the messenger into the garden, where he gave orders to the gardener to root up all the old plants, and set young shoots in their places. Without saying more, or writing any answer, he told the messenger to return in haste to his master.

When the messenger arrived, he fell upon his face before the King, and told him he could obtain no reply. Secunder was somewhat surprized, and enquired into the particulars of the interview. Hearing the above relation he smiled, and told the messenger he had brought him an excellent answer. He accordingly put some of the old mutinous officers to death, and cashiered others; supplying their places with young men who became more obedient to command; and thus re-established his authority in the army.

In the month of Shaban 645, Sultan Nasir ul dien Mamood returned with his troops through the country which lies between the two rivers The Emperor
reduces Til-
finda. Ganges and Jumna, and after an obstinate siege, the fort of Tilfinda yielded to his arms. He then continued his march towards Kurrah, the vizier commanding the van guard. He was met at Kurrah by the Rajas Dillekie and Milleckie, whom he defeated, plundering their country, and taking many of both their families prisoners. These two Rajas had seized upon all the country to the south of the Jumna, destroyed the King's garrisons from Malava to Kurrah, and held their chief residence at Callinger. After these exploits the Emperor returned to Delhi.

In the following year, he sent the Vizier with an army towards The Vizier
chastises the
inhabitants of
Rintimpore. Rintimpore and the mountains of Meruaar, to chastise the rebellious inhabitants of these countries, which he effectually did, and returned

* Aristotle, the Philosopher.



A. D. 1149. to Delhi. The vizier's brother Abiek Cushli Chan was promoted
H. ger. 647. to the dignity of Hagib, and Eaz Zinjani to be vakeel of the
Empire.

The Emperor recalls his brother from Kinnoge. In the same year, the Sultan's brother Jellal ul dien was called from his government of Kinnoge to Delhi. But, fearing that the King had some intentions against his life, he fled to the hills of Sitnoor, with all his adherents. The Emperor pursued him, but finding, after eight months labour, that he could not lay hands upon him, he returned to Delhi. The Sultan, in the year 647, married the daughter of his Vizier, Balin, and upon the occasion made great rejoicings. He drew, in the year following, his army towards Moultan, and upon the banks of the Bea, he was joined by Shere Chan with twenty thousand chosen horse. The Sultan continued his march to Moultan, where he remained for some days. Having placed Malleck Eaz ul dien Balin in the government of Nagore and Outch, and settled some other matters, he returned to his capital.

Eaz ul dien Balin rebels, and is pardoned. This Eaz ul dien Balin, in the year 649, threw off his allegiance, and stirred up a rebellion in those provinces. This obliged the Sultan to put the imperial standard in motion towards Nagore. He put the rebels to flight; but such was the strange policy of the times, that he promised him his pardon, upon his submission; and afterwards actually continued him in his government. The Emperor, after returning from this expedition, remained only a few days at Delhi, before he proceeded to the siege of Narvar. He was met at Narvar by Raja Sahir Deo, who had just built that fortress on a steep rock, with five thousand horse, and two hundred thousand foot. This immense host were defeated with great slaughter, and the place being invested, was reduced, after a few months siege. The Emperor from thence continued his march to Chinderi and Malava, and having settled those countries,

Chinderi and Malava reduced.



tries, and appointed a Suba to govern them, returned to Delhi. The Vizier gained, in this expedition, great reputation for his conduct and personal valour.

In the mean time the Sultan's nephew, Shere Chan, viceroy of Lahore and Moulton, who was at that time reckoned a prodigy of wisdom, valour, and every royal virtue, had raised and disciplined a body of horse, with which he drove the Moguls out of the kingdom of Ghizni, and annexed it once more to the empire. He struck the currency in the name of Nazir ul dien, and proclaimed him through all the provinces. The King, for these services, added the government of Outch to his viceroyship, which, contrary to expectation, was quietly delivered up by Malleck Eaz ul dien Balin, who returned to Delhi, and received the Jagier of Budaoon.

The Sultan, in the year 650, marched by the way of Lahore into Moulton, and was joined by Cuttulich Chan, by the way of Sevan and Cushlu, from Budaoon, with fine armies. In the beginning of the following year, Amad ul dien Eaz Zingani, vakeel of the empire, who had rose to that dignity through the interest of the vizier, began to envy the fame and influence of that able minister. He took every opportunity to traduce his benefactor to the King in private. The Monarch's affections for the vizier, began to cool visibly, and he was even prevailed upon at last to discharge that great man from his office, when he only conferred upon him, in lieu of it, the small government of Haffi, for his subsistence, where his enemy sought an opportunity to take his life.

Amad ul dien Eaz now became absolute in the King's favour, and began his authority by turning out every person from their offices and governments, who had been appointed by the former vizier. He removed

A. D. 1251.
Higer, 649.

Shere Chan
recovers
a
Ghizni from
the Moguls.

The Vizier
disgraced.

Amad ul dien
Eaz in gre
favour with
the King.



A. D. 1252. removed all Balin's friends and relations from the royal presence, con-
Higer. 650. stituting Ein ul Muluck Mahummud, who resided at Delhi, vizier of
the empire, and Eaz ul dien Cutchlew Chan, lord of requests.
When he returned to Delhi with the King, he every where disturbed
the public peace, and overset the fundamental laws of the country.

Shere Chan
disgraced.

The Emperor again mustered his army, and began his march to-
wards the river Bea, for Shere Chan had unfortunately, at this time,
been defeated by the Sindies, and lost several forts in Moultaan.
This furnished the favourite with an opportunity of disgracing him
with the King, who turned him out of his viceroyship of Outch,
Tiberhind, and Moultaan, which he conferred upon Arfilla Chan,
and then returned to his capital. In the mean time, Malleck Eaz
ul dien Rizi ul Muluck, the Turk, was assassinated by the zemindars of
Keital and Coram, which prevailed on the Sultan to march his army
to revenge his death, from which expedition he very soon returned
again to Delhi.

The insolence
of Amad ul
dien

occasions a
revolt.

The government of the Vakeel became by this time so invidious
to the whole Empire, that the Subas of Kurra, Manickpoor, Oud,
Budaoon, Tiberhind, Sunnam, Koram, Lahore, Sewalic, and Na-
gore, entered into an association, and sent an embassy to Balin the
former vizier, informing him, that the government of the coun-
try was quite subverted, and that the oppression and arrogance of
Amad ul dien was beyond expression; that they were therefore
desirous he should proceed to Delhi, and take the Empire, as for-
merly, under his wise conduct and direction. Balin consented, and,
according to appointment, all the Omrahs met with their forces
in one day at Koram.

The Sultan, and Amad ul dien, upon receiving this intelligence,
marched with the imperial forces, to disperse the insurgents; but
when



when the royal army advanced as far as Haffi, Anigh Chan Balin, and the rest of the Omrahs, sent an address to the King, to the following purpose: "That they were his loyal subjects, and were satisfied to kiss the foot of his throne, so be he would banish Amad ul dien from his presence." The Sultan was under the necessity of either consenting to this request, or to lose his Empire. He therefore dismissed the obnoxious favourite from his presence, and sent him to Budaoon. The Omrahs presented their offerings, and were honoured with royal dresses. Jellal ul dien Chani, was appointed to command at Lahore, and Shere Chan was confirmed in the governments of Debalpoor, Moulton, Battanize, Tiberhind, and other districts adjacent. The Sultan returned peaceably to Delhi, and expressed great joy at seeing his old vizier, while the flower of desire blossomed in the hearts of the subjects.

A.D. 1253.
Higer. 651.
He is dismissed from the presence.

In the year 653, the Emperor conferred the government of Oud upon Cuttulich Chan, of which however he wanted to deprive him in a few months, for that of Barage, which was neither so lucrative, nor so honourable. Cuttulich Chan, upon this account, swerved from his allegiance, and, having brought over some other Omrahs to his party, raised a great army, which obliged the Sultan to send the vizier against him. Malleck Taje ul dien, the Turk, was dispatched at the same time against Amad ul dien, who had begun a diversion about Budaoon. He was however soon defeated, taken prisoner, and put to death. Cuttulich Chan was also routed by the Vizier, and fled to Sitnoor. The Vizier destroyed the place, but not being able to lay hold of the rebel, he returned to Delhi.

Insurrections quelled.

Diepal, the Raja of Sitnoor, in the year 655, entered into an alliance with Cuttulich Chan, and, raising a great army, advanced to meet Cutchlew Chan, Suba of Sind, who was in the same confederacy. All three joining their forces near Koram, became very formidable

A conspiracy in the imperial army,



A. D. 1257.
Higer. 655.

discovered
and baffled
by the Vizier.

to the empire. The King again ordered his Vizier, with a great army, to take the field. When the two armies approached one another, a mutiny was stirred up in the Vizier's camp, by Sheeh Islam, Cuttab ul dien, and Cafi Shumse ul dien Berachi, who wrote private letters to the enemy, projecting the means of their taking the city, in which they had also set a faction on foot to favour them. The Vizier having received good intelligence of this treasonable correspondence, acquainted the King of the particulars, who ordered them all to be confined. In the mean time the enemy, according to the scheme projected, marched with a body of chosen cavalry, a hundred crores, in two days, advancing to the gates of Delhi, where the traitors had promised to meet them that day with their forces; but finding themselves disappointed, and the Sultan's troops marching out against them, they entirely dispersed, Cutchlew Chan retreating to Sind, but Cuttulick Chan was never heard of afterwards.

The Moguls,
obliged to re-
treat.

Towards the latter end of this year, a Mogul army invaded Outch and Moulton, which obliged the Sultan to point his hostile spears towards that quarter; but the Moguls fled upon his approach; so that, without further trouble, he returned to his capital, giving the country of Punjaab to Shere Chan, and sending Malleck Jellal ul dien Chani to the government of Lucknouti.

Disobedient
Omrahs
brought to
reason.

In the year 656, the Sultan marched his army towards Kurrah and Manickpoor, to chastise Arfilla Chan and Calliche Chan, who had not joined their forces in obedience to his orders, when he marched the year before to Punjaab. These Subas, however, found means at court to mollify the King's resentment, and Arfilla Shaw found even interest to obtain the government of Lucknouti, which had been so lately disposed of to Jellab ul dien, while the other obtained some districts by the foot of the mountains.



Cutchlew Chan, the Vizier's brother, was, in the year 657, appointed to the government of Kole, Jellafore, Gualier, and Biana. Nothing else remarkable happened this season, but the death of Cutchlew Chan, governor of Sind. The Vizier, by the King's commands, led next year an army towards Sewalic and Rintimpore, where the Rajaputs had begun to raise great disturbances, having collected a very numerous body of horse and foot, at the head of which they plundered and burnt the country. Upon the Vizier's approach, they retired into strong posts and passes, among the mountains, where, however, he routed them, and continued to ravage their country four months, with fire and sword, setting a price upon their heads.

A. D. 1238.
Higer. 657.
Cutchlew
Chan made
governor of
Gualier, &c.

The Rajas of the Rajaputs, rendered at length desperate, collected all their forces, and rushed down from the mountains to be revenged of the Mahomedans. The Vizier saw the storm descending, and had time to draw up his army in order of battle to receive them. The attack of the enemy was violent and terrible, being actuated by rage, revenge, and despair. It was with much difficulty that the Vizier could keep the imperial troops in the field, but the enemy over-heating themselves towards mid-day, they became hourly more languid and faint. The imperial general inspiring his troops with fresh courage, for till then, they had acted upon the defensive, began to charge in his turn, and, before evening, pursued the enemy, with great slaughter, back to the hills. The Vizier's loss was very considerable in this action, and many brave Omrahs drank of the cup of martyrdom. Of the enemy above ten thousand were slain, and ninety of their chiefs made prisoners, besides a great number of common soldiers. The Vizier having, by this action, relieved the fort of Rintimpore, which had been besieged by some other tribes, he returned victorious to Delhi. The captive chiefs were cruelly ordered to be put to death, and their unfortunate soldiers condemned to perpetual slavery.

Some rebellious
Rajas
overthrown
by the Vizier.



A. D. 1258.

Higer. 657.

Embassy from

Halacu King
of Persia.

In the month of Ribbi ul Awil of this year, an ambassador arrived at Delhi, on the part of Hallacu Chan †. The Vizier went out to meet the ambassador with fifty thousand horse, of Arab, Agim, Turk, Chillege, and Afghan; two hundred thousand infantry in arms, two thousand chain-elephants of war, and three thousand carriages of fire-works. He drew up in order of battle, formed in columns of twenty deep, with the artillery and cavalry properly disposed. Having then exhibited some feats of horsemanship, in mock battles, and fully displayed his pomp to the ambassador, he conducted him into the city and royal palace. There the court was very splendid, every thing being set out in the most gorgeous and magnificent manner. All the Omrahs, officers of state, judges, priests, and great men of the city were present, besides five princes of Ayrac, Chorrasan, and Maverulnere, with their retinues, who had taken protection at Delhi, from the arms of Chingez Chan, who, a little before that time, had overrun most part of Asia. Many Rajas of Hindostan, subject to the empire, were there, and stood next the throne.

The Empe-
ror dies.

This ceremony being concluded with great pomp, nothing particular occurred at Delhi, till the year 663, when the Emperor fell sick, and, having lingered some months on the bed of affliction, died on the 11th of Jemmad ul Awil, in the year 664, much lamented by his people.

His singular
character.

Sultan Mamood was very singular in his private character, for, contrary to the custom of all princes, he kept no concubines. He had but one wife, whom he obliged to do every homely part of housewifery; and when she complained one day, that she had burnt her fingers in baking his bread, desiring he might allow her a maid to assist her, he rejected her request, with saying, that he was only a trustee for the

† Halacu Chan was grandson to the famous Zingis Chan, was a great conqueror himself, and King of Persia.

state,



state, and that he was determined not to burthen it with needless expences. He therefore exhorted her to persevere in her duty with patience, and God would reward her in the end.

A. D. 1265.
Higer. 664.

As the Princes of Hindostan never eat in publick, his table was rather that of a hermit, than suitable to a great King. He also continued the whimsical notion of living by his pen. One day, as an Omrah was inspecting a Coran of the Emperor's writing, before him, he pointed out a word, which he said was wrong. The King, looking at it, smiled, and drew a circle round it. But when the critic was gone, he began to erase the circle, and restore the word. This being observed by one of his old attendants, he begged to know his Majesty's reason for so doing; to which he replied, "That he knew the word was originally right, but he thought it better to erase from a paper, than touch the heart of a poor man, by bringing him to shame." These might, indeed, be virtues in private life, but were certainly none in a sovereign; for notwithstanding the praises conferred upon him by historians, we must look upon him rather as the representation than the real substance of a great monarch.

SECTION X.

The Reign of Sultan YEAS UL DIEN BALIN.

SULTAN Balin was a Turk of Chitta, of the tribe of Alberi, and, in his youth, was carried prisoner by the Moguls, who conquered that country, and sold to a merchant, who conveyed him to Bagdat. His father was a chief of great power, and commanded ten thousand horse in that unfortunate war in which our young hero was taken. He was bought at Bagdat in the year 630, by Chaja Jemmal ul dien of Bufforah, who was then famous for his piety and learning.

D d 2



A. D. 1265. learning. His master having learned that he was a relation of Sultan
Higer. 664. Altumsh, proceeded with him immediately to Delhi, and presented
Sent to Delhi. him to the Emperor, who rewarded him so handsomely, that he re-
turned independent to Bagdat.

His gradual
rise in the
state.
The Sultan employed him first in the office of chief falconer, in
which art he was very expert. He rose from that station, both by
the influence of his brother, who happened to be then an Omrah,
and in great favour at the court of Delhi, and by his own merit. He
ascended gradually, from one preferment to another, till he became
an Omrah of the empire, and a man in great esteem. In the reign of
Ruckun ul dien, when he commanded in Punjaab, hearing his ene-
mies at court had enraged the King against him, he refused to obey
his orders to return, and kept for some time possession of that coun-
try. But having advanced to Delhi, with the confederate Omrahs,
who came to depose the Empress Rizia, he was taken prisoner in their
flight, and remained there some time in confinement. He however
made his escape, and joined the party of Byram Shaw against the
Empress, whom he twice defeated, as we have seen in that reign.
This gained him great reputation; and he had the government of
Haffi and Rabari conferred upon him; in which office he distin-
guished himself in several actions against the rebels of Mewat.

Made Vi-
zier.
Succeeds to
the Empire.
In the reign of Sultan Musafood, he was advanced to the dignity of
Amir Hajib, in which he gained great reputation; and in that of
Nafir ul dien he was raised to the Vizarit, which high office he managed
in such a manner, as to leave the King but the mere title of royalty.
He therefore, upon the death of his sovereign, mounted the throne,
not only without opposition, but even by the general voice of the no-
bility and people.

In the reign of Shumse ul dien Altumsh, forty of his Turkish
slaves, who were in great favour, entered into a solemn association



to support one another, and upon the King's death, to divide the Empire among themselves. But jealousies and dissensions having arose afterwards among them, prevented this project from being executed. The Emperor Balin was of their number; and, as several of them had raised themselves to great power in the kingdom, the first thing he did after his accession, was to rid himself of all who remained of that association, either by sword or poison; among whom was a nephew of his own, Shere Chan, a man of great bravery and reputation.

A. D. 1265.
Higer. 664.

Rids himself
of his rivals.

His fears, after these assassinations, were entirely dispelled, and he became so famous for his justice and wise government, that his alliance was courted by all the Kings of Iran and Turan. He took particular care that none but men of merit and family should be admitted to any office in his government; and for this purpose he endeavoured to make himself acquainted with the particular talents and connections of every person in his court. As he was very assiduous in rewarding merit, he was no less so in punishing vice; for whoever misbehaved in their station, were certain of being immediately disgraced.

Courted by
the Kings of
Tartary and
Persia.

He expelled all flatterers, usurers, pimps and players from his court; and being one day told, that an Omrah, an old servant of the crown, who had acquired a vast fortune, by usury and monopoly in the Bazar, would present him with some lacks of Rupees, if he would honour him with one word from the throne; he rejected the proposal with great disdain, and said, "what must his subjects think of a King who should condescend to hold discourse with a wretch so infamous?"

An enemy to
vice.

Balin was so famous for his generosity, that all the princes of the East, who had been overthrown by the arms of Chingez Chan, fought

His generosity.



A. D. 1265.
Higer. 664.

fought protection at his court. There came upwards of twenty of those unfortunate sovereigns from Turkestan, Mavir ul Nere, Chorassan, Ayrac, Azurbaejan, Pharis, Room*, and Shaam†. They had a princely allowance, and palaces for their residence allotted them; and they were upon public occasions, ranked before his throne, according to their dignity; all standing to the right and left, except two princes of the Kalifat, who were permitted to sit on either side of the Musnud. The palaces in which the royal fugitives resided in Delhi, took their names from their respective possessors, and were ranked in the following order: Abbassi, Singeri, Charizm Shahi, Willami, Ollavi, Attabuki, Ghor, Chingezi, Roomi, Aefunkari, Emuni, Museli, Samarcandi, Cashgari, and Chittai.

In the retinue of those princes, were the most famous men for learning, war, arts and sciences, that Asia at that time produced. The court of Hindostan was therefore, in the days of Balin, reckoned the most polite and magnificent in the world. All the philosophers, poets and divines, formed a society every night, at the house of Chan Shehîd, the heir apparent of the Empire; and Amir Chusero the poet presided at those meetings. Another society of musicians, dancers, mimicks, players, buffoons, and story-tellers was constantly convened at the house of the Emperor's second son Kera Chan, who was given to pleasure and levity. The Omrahs followed the examples of their superiors, so that various societies and clubs were formed in every quarter of the city. The Sultan himself, having a great passion for splendor and magnificence in his palaces, equipages and liveries, he was imitated by the court. A new city seemed to lift up its head, and arts to arise from the bosoms of luxury and expence.

Such was the pomp and grandeur of the royal presence, that none
and magni- could approach the throne without terror. The ceremonies of intro-
cence,

* The lesser Asia, so called from being long a part of the Roman Empire.

† Syria.

duction



duction were conducted with so much reverence and solemnity, and every thing disposed so as to strike awe and astonishment into the beholders. Nor was Balin less magnificent in his cavalcades. His state elephants were caparisoned in purple and gold. His horseguards, consisting of a thousand noble Turks in splendid armour, were mounted upon the finest Persian steeds, with bridles of silver, and saddles of rich embroidery. Five hundred chosen men in rich livery, with their drawn swords upon their shoulders, ran proclaiming his approach, and clearing the way before him. All the Omrahs followed according to their rank, with their various equipages and attendants. The Monarch, in short, seldom went out with less than one hundred thousand men; which he used to say, was not to gratify any vanity in himself, but to exalt him in the eyes of the people.

The festivals of Norose and Ide, as also the anniversary of his own birth, were held with wonderful pomp and splendor. But amidst all this glare of royalty, he never forgot that he was the guardian of the laws, and protector of his meanest subjects. It was before Balin's time a custom in Hindostan, in cases of murder, to satisfy the relations by a certain fine, if they consented to accept of it. He abolished this custom, which has been since revived, and ordered the Suba of Budaoon, Malleck Feick, to be put to death upon the complaint of a poor woman for killing her son.

When Balin was only an Omrah, he gave into the then courtly vices of wine, women, and play. But upon his accession he became a great enemy to all those luxuries; prohibiting wine upon the severest penalties to be drank in his dominions; laying great restrictions upon women of pleasure, and banishing all gamesters from his court.

So zealous was Balin to support his authority, that for the disobedience of one man, he would order a force to the remotest parts



A. D. 1265.
Higer. 664.
His severity
to rebels.

of the empire to bring him to punishment. In cases of insurrection or rebellion against his government, he was not content, as had formerly been the custom, to chastise the leaders, but he extended the capital punishment of high treason to the meanest of their vassals and adherents. This severity rendered it necessary for the Subas to have the King's mandate for every expedition or hostilities they were about to commence.

Rejects the
advice of his
council to re-
duce Malava.

That his army might be kept in constant exercise, he led them out twice every week to hunt, for forty or fifty miles round the city, and established laws for the preservation of the game. In the year 664, he was advised by his council, to undertake an expedition to reduce the kingdoms of Guzerat and Malava, which had been annexed to the empire by Cuttub ul dien, but were afterwards permitted to shake off the yoke. To this advice the Emperor would by no means consent, saying, that the Moguls were become so powerful in the north, having conquered all the Mussulmen princes, that he thought it would be much wiser to secure what he possessed against those invaders, than to weaken himself, and leave his country unguarded, by foreign wars.

Tatar Chan
reduced.

Mahummud Tatar Chan, the son of Arfilla Chan, who had begun to assert independence in Lucknouti, was this year, however, reduced, and obliged to send his usual tribute to Delhi. A great rejoicing was made upon this occasion, at which the King was present and gave public audience.

The Mewats
extirpated.

Balin ordered, in the course of the same year, an army to extirpate a certain tribe of banditti called Mewats, who had possessed themselves of an extensive wilderness about eighty miles south east of the city towards the hills; from whence they used, in former reigns, to make incursions, to the number of fifty thousand, even to the gates of



of Delhi. It is said, that in this expedition, above one hundred thousand of these wretches were put to the sword; and the army being supplied with hatchets and other implements, cleared away the woods for above the circumference of fifty crores. The cleared space, afterwards proved excellent lands, and was well inhabited, as the people were protected by a line of forts along the foot of the mountains.

In the 665 year of the Higera, Balin sent an army down between the Ganges and Jumna, to suppress some insurrections in those parts, with orders to punish the offenders without mercy. The Sultan soon after marched in person towards Kattal, Pattiali and Bhogepoor, whose inhabitants had begun to stop all intercourse with Bengal, by the way of Jionpoor and Benaris. He put some thousands of them to death, establishing justice and public security in those parts. He ordered forts to be built, which he garrisoned with Pattans, to crush any future disturbance, and then returned towards Delhi. Soon after his arrival, he received intelligence of an insurrection in Budaoon and Kutter, whither he hastened with five thousand chosen horse, and ordered a general massacre among the unfortunate insurgents, and some thousands of every age and sex fell by the sword.

If such cruelties can be any where excused, it must be in a government like that of Hindostan, where rebellions were in those days so common, that, without the most vigorous measures, the peace and royal authority could not be at all established.

Balin, after these transactions, marched his army towards the mountains of Jehud, where he employed them for the space of two years, in taking forts, and reducing the wild inhabitants to obedience. This country was famous for breeding horses, many thousands of which were carried by the Sultan to Delhi. Wherever the



A. D. 1266.
Higer. 665.

King marched there was an order for the Subas, Zemindars, Fogedars and magistrates of the provinces to meet him on their own frontiers, with their offerings, which was afterwards distributed among the poor. The Sultan, some time after, made a journey to Lahore, which city, having greatly suffered from the Moguls, he ordered to be put in a proper state of defence and repair; and after having erected some public buildings, he returned to Delhi.

Regulates the
army.

About this time, Balin was told by one of his Omrahs, that a great number of veterans, who had served in the preceding reigns, were now become invalids and incapable of attending their duty. The Sultan, upon this, ordered a list of their names to be taken, and settling half pay upon them for life, discharged them from further service. The old men however, were dissatisfied with this provision, and some of the principals of them were deputed by the rest, to go to Malleck ul Omrah, Fuchur ul dien, chief magistrate of Delhi, with presents, to represent their case to the King.

This venerable magistrate being in great favour with the Sultan, rejected their presents, but told them he would use his endeavour to get them continued upon full pay. He accordingly went next day to court, and while he stood in the presence, put on the appearance of sorrow, which being observed by the King, he enquired about the cause of his grief. The old man replied, "I was just thinking that if in the presence of God, all the old men were rejected, what would become of me." The King was struck with the reproof, and after some pensive silence, ordered the veterans to be continued in their usual pay.

Shere Chan
dies.

In the fourth year of the reign of Balin, Shere Chan Chaja Tash, who had, from the time of Nasir ul dien, governed the provinces of Lahore, Moulton, Battize, Tibberhind, Debalpoor and other dis-



tricts, died: Some say, by poison from the King, but this is not now believed, though reported by some malicious people in those days. He was esteemed a man of great genius and an intrepid warrior; having defended his country from the incursions of the Moguls, who now became the terror of the East. Sultan Balin, upon the demise of Shere Chan, gave Sunnam and Semana to Timur Chan, and the other countries were divided among other Omrahs of his court. The moguls, encouraged by the death of Shere Chan, began again their depredations in those provinces. The mutual jealousies and dissensions among the Subas, prevented them from doing any thing effectual for the public good.

A. D. 1268.
Higer. 667.

The Emperor, therefore, was obliged to appoint his eldest son Mahummud, at that time bearing the title of Chan Malleck, afterwards famous by the name of Chan Shehid, viceroy of all those frontier provinces. Mahummud was immediately dispatched to his government with a fine army, and some of the wisest and best generals in the empire. The Prince himself was blest with a bright and comprehensive genius, taking great delight in learning and the company of learned men. He with his own hand, made a choice collection of the beauties of poetry, selected from the most famous in that art. The work consisted of twenty thousand couplets, and was esteemed the criterion of taste. Among the learned men in the Prince's court, Amir Chusero and Chaja Hassen bore the first rank in genius and in his esteem. These, with many more of his philosophical society, accompanied him on this expedition to Lahore.

Mahummud
appointed go-
vernor of the
frontiers;

an encourager
of learning.

Mahummud was visited at Lahore by Shech Osman Marindi, who was esteemed the greatest man of that age. But no presents or entreaty could prevail upon him to remain out of his own country; so that after a short stay, he returned. We are told, that as he was

E c 2

one



A. D. 1268.
Higer. 667.

one day reading one of his poems in Arabic before the Prince, all the poets who were present, were transported into a fit of dancing. But the piece affected the Prince, to all appearance, in a quite contrary manner; for the tears began to flow fast down his cheeks. This might indeed be occasioned by excess of pleasure, though it was, at that time, attributed to that noble emulation which grieves for that excellence to which it cannot attain.

He invites the
famous poet
Sadi to his
court.

The fame of Shech Sadi of Schiraz being great at that time, Mahummud invited him twice to his court; but that renowned sage excused himself upon account of his years, and, with much difficulty, was brought to accept of some presents. Sadi, in return, sent to Mahummud a copy of his works, and did honour to the abilities of Amir Chusero the Sultan's favourite, and president of his learned society.

Baghera, the
Sultan's
younger son,
reforms his
manners.

The Prince, every year, made a journey to see his father at Delhi, to whom he always behaved with the greatest filial affection and duty. Sultan Balin gave his younger son Baghera Chan, entitled Nasir ul dien, a Jagier of Sammana and Sunnam, whither the Prince set out to reside. His father, at his departure, advised him to recruit and discipline a good army, to watch the motions of the Moguls; and that if he ever should hear of his giving himself up to wine and his former debaucheries, he would certainly withdraw him from that Subaship, and never put confidence in him again. The Prince took the advice of his father to heart, and entirely reforming his manners, gave great proofs of his natural abilities, though his mind had taken a wrong bias in his youth. A place of rendezvous was appointed, in case of an invasion from the north, on the river Bea, near Lahore, where the two Princes were to join the imperial army from Delhi.

Every



Every thing seemed now in perfect peace and security throughout the empire, when Tughril, who was intrusted with the government of Lucknouti, began to appear in arms. In the year 678, this bold and enterprizing man led an army against the Rajas towards Jagennagur, whom he defeated, carrying off some hundreds of elephants and much wealth, out of which he made no acknowledgment to the King. Balin happened at that time to be very sick, insomuch that the news of his death was spread abroad. This intelligence having reached the ears of Tughril, he assumed the red umbrella with all the royal dignities, and declared himself King of Bengal. Balin hearing of this, wrote him an order to return immediately to his allegiance, which having produced no effect, he commanded Ab Tiggi, Suba of Oud, to raise his forces, and declaring him Suba of Bengal, sent Timar Chan Shumshi, Malleck Taje ul dien, Jemmal ul dien, and other generals, to his assistance, with an army from Delhi, to reduce the traitor to obedience.

When Ab Tiggi was joined by this force, he crossed the Sirju, now the Gagra or Deo, and proceeded towards Lucknouti, whence Tughril advanced with his forces to meet him. Tughril employed his money so well among the troops of Ab Tiggi, that he drew many of the Turkish chiefs over to his party, and then engaging the imperial army, he gave them a total defeat. The Sultan hearing this news, bit his own flesh with indignation. He ordered ab Tiggi to be hanged at the gate of Oud; and dispatched Turmutti, a Turkish general, with another army against the rebel. Nor was the fate of Turmutti more fortunate than that of his predecessor. He was totally routed, and lost all his baggage and the public treasure.

The Sultan having intelligence of this second disgrace to his arms, was in great affliction, and prepared to take the field in person. He gave orders to build a large fleet of boats, with all expedition, to carry,

A. D. 1279.
Higer. 678.

Tughril re-
bels in Luck-
nouti.

Defeats the
imperial ar-
my.

The Sultan
prepares to
march against
him in person.



A. D. 1279.
Higer. 678.

carry his baggage down the river. He, in the mean time, under pretence of going upon a hunting party, went to Sunnam and Samana, the Subaship of his younger son, whom he brought with his army with him to Delhi, leaving Malleck Sotch in the government. Having collected the imperial army, he appointed Malleck ul Omrah, Fuchier ul dien, or chief magistrate of the city, regent during his own absence.

He enters
Bengal.

The Emperor crossing the Ganges, without waiting for the dry season, proceeded to Lucknouti by forced marches. But having met with great delay, on account of the roads, and numerous rivers, Tughril heard of his approach, and had time to collect his army, and with all his elephants, treasure and effects, took the rout of Jagena-gur†, with intention to remain there till the Sultan should return to Delhi. The Sultan having arrived in Lucknouti, remained there only a few days. He appointed Hissam ul dien Barbek, governor of the province, and proceeded himself, with his army, towards Jagena-gur. At Sunnargaum, the zemindar of that place, Hunnage Rai, joined him with his troops, and promised to guard the river against Tughril, if he should endeavour to escape that way.

Pursues the
rebels into
Orissa.

The Sultan continued his march with great expedition, but he could gain no intelligence of the enemy. He therefore ordered Malleck Barbek beg Birse, with seven thousand chosen horse, to advance ten or twelve crores, in front of the army, and, by all means, to endeavour to gain intelligence of the rebels; but in spite of all enquiry, no satisfactory accounts could for several days be obtained. One day however, Malleck Mahummud Shir, governor of Kole, being out from the advanced guard with forty horse, reconnoitring the country, beheld some bullocks with pack-saddles, and having seized the drivers, began to enquire about the enemy. They obstinately

† A town in Orissa, near Cattack.

pretended



pretended ignorance; but the head of one of them being struck off, the rest fell upon their faces, and confessed that they had just left the enemy's camp, which was about two crores in front, that they had halted for that day, and intended to advance to Jagenagur.

Mahummud Shir sent the drivers to Malleck Barbek Birse, who commanded the vanguard, that he might examine them, and proceeded himself as directed, to reconnoitre the enemy's camp. He saw, from a rising ground, the whole encampment, extended over a great plain, with the elephants and cavalry picqueted, and every thing in rest and security. Having fixed his eye upon the rebel's tents, which were pitched in the center of the army, he determined to execute one of the boldest enterprizes perhaps ever attempted. He advanced on full speed, with his forty attendants, whom he fired with the glory of the undertaking, towards the camp, which he was permitted to enter, being taken for one of their own parties. He continued his course to the usurper's tents, and then ordered his men to draw; and rushing into the great tent of audience, which was crowded with men of distinction, put all they met to the sword, crying, "Victory to Sultan Balin!"

Tughril, who imagined he was surprized by the imperial army, started from his throne in confusion, and cut his way through the tent behind. He mounted a horse without a saddle, and the cry having now spread through the camp, he was confirmed in his fears, and fled towards the river, with an intention to cross it, that he might make his escape to Jagenagur. In the mean time, Malleck Makuddur, the brother of the gallant Mahummud Shir, having seen the rebel as he fled, pursued him to the river, and shot him with an arrow as he was crossing. Tughril immediately fell from his horse, and Malleck plunging into the stream, dragged him out by the hair, and cut off his head. At that very instant seeing some of the ene-

my,

A. D. 1279.
Higer. 678.

A gallant exploit of Mahummud Shir.

Tughril flies,

and is killed.



A. D. 1279.
Higer. 678.

my coming that way, he hid the head in the sand, and sending the body down the stream, begun to bath himself in the river. The party questioned him about their King, and then went off without suspicion.

His army fly.

Mahummud's party, in the mean time, having dispatched every body they found in the royal tents, dispersed themselves in such a manner among the enemy, who were now in the greatest confusion, that most of them escaped in the crowd. Tughril being no where to be found, and the panic having run through the whole army, the flight became general, and none thought about any thing but personal safety. Those who remained alive of the forty heroes, loitered in the rear, till the enemy were quite gone off the field. They then returned to the deserted camp, where they chanced to meet Mal-leck Mukuddur. He related the King's death to his brother, who instantly sent the head to the Sultan. He at the same time dispatched an express to the vanguard, which came up that night, and took possession of the camp.

The Sultan
reprimands
Mahummud
for his rash-
ness,

but rewards
him.

The Sultan arrived the next day, with the imperial army. He called to him the two gallant brothers, and commanded them to relate the particulars of this astonishing exploit. He heard it with surprise; but instead of praising them, as they expected, he told them that the rashness of their behaviour was inconsistent with their duty and prudence, with much more to the same purpose. But he, in a few days, took them into favour, and conferred great titles and honours upon them.

The Sultan finding the enemy had entirely dispersed, returned to Lucknouti, and put every one of the rebel's family, and principal adherents, to death. He did not even spare his innocent women and children; and he carried his cruelty so far, as to massacre a hundred Fakiers,



Fakiers, and their chief Shaw Collinder, for having been in great favour with the rebel, who had given him a present of three maunds of gold, to support the society. Balin appointed his son Baghera Chan, King of Lucknouti, bestowing upon him all the ensigns of royalty, and the spoils of Tughril, except the elephants and treasure, while he himself returned with his army towards Delhi.

A.D. 1277.
Higer. 678.

Balin's cruelty.

Returns to
Delhi.

The Sultan was absent upon this expedition three years. Upon his arrival, he conferred great dignities upon Malleck Fuchier ul dien, who had ruled Delhi with great wisdom. He then visited the learned men at their own houses, made them princely presents, and at their instigation, published an act of grace to all insolvent debtors, who were in confinement, striking off, at the same time, all old balances of revenues due to the crown. Notwithstanding this appearance of humanity, either the policy, or natural cruelty of his disposition, rendered him unmerciful to all rebels. He ordered spits to be erected in the market place, for the execution of all the prisoners taken in the late expedition; and it was with the utmost difficulty, that the Casies, Mufties, and learned men, in a body petitioning their pardon, could obtain it. This venerable body at last, softened the Sultan into mercy, and he drew the pen of forgiveness over their crimes.

His eldest son having heard of his father's arrival, proceeded to Delhi to visit him, and was received with the greatest affection and joy. He had not remained at Delhi three months, during which his father and he were inseparable, when news was brought that the Moguls had invaded Moulton. Mahummud hastened his departure to oppose them; but before he had taken leave, his father called him into a private apartment, and accosted him in the following manner.

His eldest son
returns to
Delhi.

Invasion of
the Moguls.

He told him, "That he himself had spent a long life in the administration and government of kingdoms; that, by study and experience,

His father's
advice to
Mahummud.

VOL. I.

Ff

he



A. D. 1282.
Higer. 681.

he had acquired some knowledge, which might be of service to Mahummud after his death, which, in the course of nature, now hastened apace. That therefore he desired he would lend him the ear of attention, and treasure up his maxims in his mind.

“When you shall ascend the throne, look upon yourself as the deputy of God. Have a just sense of the importance of your charge. Permit not any meanness of behaviour in yourself, to sully the lustre of your exalted station, nor let avaritious and low-minded men, share your esteem, or bear any part in your administration.

“Let your passions be governed by reason, and beware of giving way to your rage. Anger is dangerous in all men; but in Kings it is the weapon of death.

“Let the public treasure be expended in the service of the state, with that prudent œconomy, yet benevolent liberality, which reason will dictate to a mind always intent on doing good.

“Let the worship of God be inculcated by your example, and never permit vice and infidelity, unpunished, to hold up their face to the day.

“Be ever attentive to the business of the state, that you may avoid the imposition of designing ministers. Make it your study to see them execute your commands, without the least deviation or neglect, for it is by them you must govern your people.

“Let your judges and magistrates be men of capacity, religion, and virtue, that the light of justice may illuminate your realms. Let no light behaviour, in public or private, detract from that important majesty which exalts the idea of a King; and let every thing around you be so regulated, as to inspire that reverence and awe which will render your person sacred, and contribute to enforce your commands.



"Spare no pains to find men of genius, learning, and courage. A. D. 1282. Higer. 681. You must cherish them by your beneficence, that they may prove the soul of your council, and the sword of your power.

"Throw not down a great man to the ground for a small crime, nor entirely overlook his offence. Raise not a low man too hastily to a high station, lest he forget himself, and be an eyefore to men of superior merit.

"Never attempt any thing, unless it is through necessity, but what you are sure to accomplish; and having once determined upon a measure, let your perseverance be never shaken by doubt, nor your eye ever deviate from the object. For it is better for a King to be obstinate than pusillanimous, as in the first case he may chance to be right, in the latter he is always sure to be wrong. Nothing more certainly indicates the weakness of a prince, than a fluctuating mind."

The Sultan having ended his instructions, embraced his son tenderly, and parted with him in tears. The Prince immediately Mahummud marches against the Moguls. marched against the enemy, and having defeated and slain Mahummud Chan, chief of the Moguls, he recovered all the territories of which they had possessed themselves in the empire.

The throne of Iran was at this time filled by Argunu Chan, the son of Eback Chan, and grandson of Hallaku Chan, who had conquered that empire about the year 656. Timur Chan Chingez, who was then an Omrah of mighty renown in the empire of the race of Chingez Chan, and governed Herat, Candahar, Balich, The Moguls invade Hindostan, Cabul, Buduchsha, Ghizni, Ghor, Bamia, and other countries, invaded Hindostan, with twenty thousand chosen horse, to revenge the death of his friend Mahummud Chan, who had been killed the former year. Having ravaged all the country about Debalpoor and



A. D. 1283,
Higer. 682.

Lahore, he turned towards Moulton. Mahummud Sultan, who was then in Moulton, hearing of his designs, hastened to the banks of the river of Lahore, which runs through part of Moulton, and prepared to oppose him. When Timur Chan advanced to the river, he saw the army of Hindostan on the opposite bank. But the prince, desirous of engaging so great a chief upon equal terms, permitted Timur Chan to pass the river unmolested.

and are de-
feated by
Mahummud,

Both armies then drew up in order of battle, and engaged with great fury, for the space of three hours, in which both commanders eminently distinguished their valour and conduct. The Moguls were at last put to flight, and the Omrahs of Hind pursued them with imprudent disorder. Mahummud, fatigued by the pursuit, halted by a large pond of water, with five hundred attendants, to drink. He there fell prostrate upon the ground, to return God thanks for his victory.

who is sur-
prized and
killed.

In the mean time one of the Mogul chiefs, who had hid himself, with two thousand horse, in a neighbouring wood, rushed out upon Mahummud, and began a dreadful slaughter. The prince had just time to mount his horse, and, collecting his small party, and encouraging them by his example, fell upon his enemies. He was at last overpowered by numbers, after having thrice obliged them to give ground, and he unfortunately received a fatal arrow in his breast, by which he fell to the ground, and in a few minutes expired. A body of the troops of Hind appearing at that instant, the Moguls took to flight. Very few of the unfortunate Mahummud's party escaped from this conflict. Among the fortunate few, was Amir Chusero, the poet, who relates this event at large, in his book called Chizer Chani.

When the army returned from the pursuit of Timur Chan, and beheld their prince in his blood, the shouts of victory were changed



to the wailings of woe. No dry eye was to be seen from the meanest soldier to the Omrah of high command. The fatal news reached the old Sultan, who was now in his eightieth year. The fountains of his tears were exhausted, and life became obnoxious to his sight. However, bearing himself up against the stream of misfortune, he sent Kei Chusero his grandson, and the son of the deceased, to supply the place of his father. Kei Chusero, upon his arrival at Moul-tan, took the command of the army, and pouring the balm of benevolence and kindness upon the wounds of his afflicted people, began to adjust his government, and provide for the defence of his frontiers.

A. D. 1286,
Higer. 685.
The grief of
the army for
the death of
the Prince.

When the Sultan found grief and infirmities began to conquer his vital strength, he sent for his son Baghera Chan from Lucknouti, and appointed him his successor, at the same time insisting that he should continue with him at Delhi till his death; and appoint a deputy for his government of Lucknouti. To this Baghera Chan consented; but finding his father's illness was not likely to come soon to a crisis, he set out for Lucknouti without acquainting him of his departure. This undutiful behaviour in his son, threw the old man into the deepest affliction, so that death began now to press hard upon him.

The Sultan
worn out with
age, sends for
his son
Baghera to
succeed him.

He in the mean time sent for his grandson Kei Chusero, from Moul-tan: the Prince hastened to his presence, and a council of all the Omrahs being called, the succession was changed in his favour, all of them promising to enforce the Sultan's last will, in favour of this young Prince. Balin in a few days expired, in the year 685, after a reign of twenty-two years.

The Sultan's
death.

Immediately upon the death of the Emperor, Malleck ul Omrah Fuchur ul dien Cutwal, having assembled the Omrahs, and being
always



A. D. 1286.
Higer. 685.

always in enmity with the father of Chusero, harranged them upon the present posture of affairs. He assured them that Kei Chusero was a young man of a very violent and untractable disposition, and therefore, in his opinion, unfit to reign; besides, that the power of Baghera Chan was so great in the empire, that a civil war was to be feared if the succession should not be continued in his family. That therefore, as the father was absent, it would be most prudent for the Omrahs to elect his son Kei Kubad, who was a prince of a mild disposition and then present in Delhi. So great was the influence of the minister, that he procured the throne for Kei Kubad; and Kei Chusero, glad to escape with life, returned to his former government of Lahore.

Kei Kubad
the son of
Prince
Baghera raised
to the throne.

In the glorious reign of Sultan Balin, flourished at Delhi, besides the great men we have already mentioned, Shech Ferid ul dien Mufaoood Shukurgunge, Shech Baha ul dien Zeckeria, Shech Sidder ul dien Arif, Shech Budder ul dien Ghiznavi, Chalipa Chaga Cuttub ul dien Buchtiar Kaki, Seid Mola, and many more, eminent in all branches of science and literature.

SECTION XI.

The Reign of Sultan MOAZ UL DIEN KEI KUBAD, ben Bughera Chan, ben Sultan Yeas ul dien Balin.

Kei Kubad.

WHEN Sultan Balin was numbered with the dead, Kei Kubad his grandson, in his eighteenth year, ascended the throne, and assumed the title of Moaz ul dien. He was a prince remarkably handsome in his person, and of an affable and mild disposition. He had a talent for literature, and his knowledge that way



way was pretty extensive. His mother was a beautiful princess, A. D. 1286.
Higer. 685. daughter to Nasir ul dien Altumsh; and if purity of blood royal is of any real worth, Kei Kubad had that to boast, for a series of generations.

As he had been bred up with great strictness under the wings of his father, when he became master of his own actions he began to give a loose to pleasure without restraint. He delighted in love, and in the soft society of silver bodied damsels with musky tresses, spent great part of his time. When it was publicly known that the King was a man of pleasure, it became immediately fashionable at court; and in short, in a few days, luxury and vice so prevailed that every shade was filled with ladies of pleasure, and every street rung with musick and mirth. Even the magistrates were seen drunk in public, and riot was heard in every house. Luxury prevails at Delhi.

The Sultan built a palace at Kilogurry upon the banks of the river Gion, and retired thither to enjoy his pleasures undisturbed; admitting no company but singers, players, musicians and buffoons. Malleck Nizam ul dien, who was nephew and son in law to Fuchir ul dien, entering into the King's humours, gained great favour, and was raised to the dignity of Vakeel Sultanit, and got the reins of government in his hands; and Kuaam ul dien Ellaka, who was the greatest man of that age, was appointed his deputy. Kei Kubad gives himself up to pleasure.
Malleck Nizam manages public affairs.

Malleck Nizam ul dien, seeing that the king was quite swallowed up in his pleasures, began to form schemes to clear his own way to the Empire. The first object of his attention was Kei Chusero, who was now gone to Ghizni, to endeavour to bring Timur Chan over to his party, in order to recover the throne of Delhi; to which he claimed a title from his father's right of primogeniture, as well as from Aspires to the throne.



A. D. 1286. from the will of the last Sultan. But in this scheme Chufero did
Higer. 685. not succeed, and he was obliged to return from Ghizni in great
disgust.

In the mean time, Nizam ul dien endeavoured to make him as
obnoxious as possible to the King, who was at length prevailed upon
to entice Chufero to Delhi. Nizam hired assassins to murder the un-
fortunate prince on the way, which they accomplished at the vilage
of Hicke. The villainies of Nizam did not stop here. He forged
a correspondence between Chaja Chatire the vizier, and Kei Chufero,
and thus effected that minister's disgrace and banishment. He also
privately assassinated all the old servants of Sultan Balin, infomuch
that a general consternation was spread through the city, though
none as yet suspected Nizam as the cause. The more he succeeded
in his villainies, he became less secret in the execution; and though
he began to be detested by all ranks, his power and influence was
so great with the King, that he was the terror of every man.

While things were in this situation, advices arrived of another
invasion of Moguls into the districts of Lahore. Malleck Barbeck
beg Birse and Chan Jehan were sent with an army against them.
The Moguls were defeated near Lahore, and a number of prisoners
brought to Delhi. The next step the traitor took, was to inspire
the King with jealousy of his Mogul troops, who, as foldiers of for-
tune, had enlisted in great numbers in his service. He pretended
that in case of a Mogul invasion, they would certainly join their
countrymen against him, insinuating at the same time, that he be-
lieved there was already some treachery intended.

The weak prince listened to those villainous intimations, and,
calling their chiefs one day together, he ordered them to be set upon
by his guards and massacred; confiscating, at the same time, all their
goods

Murders Kei
Chufero.

His many
villainies.

The Moguls
defeated.

Kei Kubad
massacres the
Moguls in his
service.



goods and wealth. He seized upon all the Omrahs who had any A. D. 1288.
Higer. 687. connections with the Moguls, and sent them prisoners to distant gar-
risons in the remotest parts of the empire. So blind was Kei Kubad
to his own ruin, and so infatuated by this deceitful minister, that
when any of his father's friends, or wellwishers to himself and the
state, made any complaints against the traitor, he immediately called
for Nizam himself, and smiling, told him, that such a person had
been doing him such and such ill offices, with an intention to alien-
ate his affections from him. The person who preferred the com-
plaint became, by this means, a sacrifice, while fear prevented others
from falling martyrs to virtue and honesty.

When Nizam thus carried all before him in the Durbar, his wife The minister
carries all be-
fore him. was no less busy in the Haram. She had all the ladies at her devo-
tion; and, by way of particular respect, was called the King's mo-
ther. Malleck ul Omrah Fuchir ul dien Cutwal, who had now
reached his ninetieth year, perceived the design of the treacherous
minister, and called him to his house, and by various arguments,
endeavoured to suppress his ambitious schemes, and to lay the de-
formity of such behaviour fully open to his view. The minister
allowed the justice of his reasoning, and affirmed that he had no
further intentions than to secure himself in the King's favour. That
having, unfortunately, disoblged so many people, it was dangerous
for him to permit his authority to decline.

In the mean time, Baghera Chan the Sultan's father, who had
contented himself with the kingdom of Bengal, having heard how
matters went on at the court of Delhi, penetrated into the designs
of the minister, and wrote a long letter to his son forewarning him
of his danger, and advising him how to proceed. But his advice, Baghera
Chan's advice
to his son is
slighted. like that of others, was of no weight with that vicious, luxurious,
and infatuated Prince. When Baghera found that his instructions were



A. D. 1188.
Higer. 687.
Marches to-
wards Delhi.

flighted, and that things would soon be brought to a disagreeable issue, he collected a great army and directed his standards towards Delhi, about two years after the death of Balin. Sultan Kei Kubad hearing that his father had advanced as far as Behar, drew out his forces and marched down to meet him, encamping his army upon the banks of the Gagera. Baghera Chan lay upon the Sirve, and both armies remained some days in hourly expectation of an action. The old man finding his army much inferiour to that of his son, began to despair of reducing him by force, and accordingly began to treat of peace.

A conference
proposed be-
tween the fa-
ther and son.
The young Prince, upon this, became more haughty, and by the advice of his favourite prepared for battle. In the mean time, a letter arrived from his father, wrote in the most tender and affectionate terms, begging he might be blessed with one sight of him before matters were carried to extremities. This letter awakened nature which had slumbered so long in Kei Kubad's breast, and he gave orders to prepare his retinue, that he might visit his father. The favourite attempted all in his power to prevent this interview, but finding the Prince, for once, obstinate, he prevailed upon him to insist, as Emperor of Delhi, upon the first visit, hoping by this means, to break off the conference. His design, however, did not succeed, for the old King, seeing what a headstrong boy he had to deal with, consented to come to the imperial camp, and ordered the Astrologers to determine upon a lucky hour, and crossing the river, proceeded towards his son's camp.

Kei Kubad's
insolence.
The young Monarch having prepared every thing for Baghera's reception in the most pompous and ceremonious manner, mounted his throne, and arrogantly gave orders, that his father, upon his approach, should three times kiss the ground. The old man accordingly, when he arrived at the first door, was ordered to dismount,



dismount, and after he had come in sight of the throne, he was commanded to pay his obeysance in three different places as he advanced. The Sultan's Chobdars crying out, according to custom, Baghera Chan to the King of the world sends health.

The old man was so much shocked at this indignity, that he burst out into a flood of tears; which being observed by the son, he could no longer support his unnatural insolence, but leaping from the throne, fell on his face at his father's feet, imploring his forgiveness for his offence. The good old man melted into compassion, and raising him in his arms embraced him, and hung weeping upon his neck. The scene in short was so affecting on both sides, that the whole court began to wipe the tears from their eyes.

These transports being over, the young Sultan helped his father to mount the throne, and paying him his respects took his place at his right hand, ordering a charger full of golden suns to be waved three times over his father's head, and afterwards to be given among the people. All the Omrahs also presented to him their Nafirs.

Public business being then talked over, every thing was settled in peace and friendship, and Baghera Chan returned to his own camp. A friendly intercourse commenced immediately between the two armies, for the space of twenty days, in which time the father and son alternately visited one another, and the time was spent in festivity and mirth. The principal terms settled between the two Kings were, that they should respectively retain their former dominions; and then Sultan Moaz ul dien Kei Kubad prepared to return to Delhi, and his father to Bengal.

Before they had taken leave, Baghera Chan called his son, the favourite minister and his deputy into a private apartment, and gave

G g 2

them

A.D. 1288.
Higer, 687.

Mollified up-
on seeing his
father.

A peace set-
tled between
them.

They return
to their re-
spective capi-
tals.



A. D. 1233.
Higer. 687.

them a long lecture of advice on the art of government. He then embraced Kei Kubad, and whispered in his ear, to rid himself of Nizam ul dien as soon possible. They both parted in tears, and returned to their respective capitals. Baghera Chan was much affected upon this occasion, and told his friends at his return to his own camp, "that he had that day parted with his son and the empire," still apprehensive of the minister and the wayward disposition of the young man.

Kei Kubad
beginning to
reform,

When the Sultan arrived at Delhi, the advice of his father for a few days seemed to take root in his mind. But his reformation was not the interest of the minister. He therefore soon brought back his prince to the paths of pleasure. He, for this purpose, collected together all the most beautiful women, most graceful dancers and sweetest singers from all parts of the empire; and these allurements to vice were occasionally introduced to his view.

is again
brought back
to pleasure.

One day as he was riding out, he was accosted by a beautiful lady, mounted upon a fine Arabian horse, with a crown of jewels upon her head, a thin white robe with golden flowers flowing loosely over her snowy shoulders, and a sparkling girdle of gems around her slender waist. This fair one advancing before the royal umbrella, with a thousand charms and smiles began to sing a love song. Then stopping short, she begged pardon for her intrusion, and would not, without much intreaty, proceed. The King was struck with the beauty of this enchantress, and immediately dismounting, ordered his camp to be pitched, and employed the evening in the pleasures of love. This damsel was no less remarkable for her wit than for her beauty. The King, while she was dancing, having broke out in rapturous verses upon those charms which she displayed, she answered every time extempore in the same measure, with such propriety



propriety and elegance as astonished and silenced the greatest wits A. D. 1289.
Higer. 683.
of the court.

In short, the King continued in this course of pleasure, till wine, Kei Kubad
falls sick.
and intemperance in his other passions, had ruined his health. He fell sick, and then began to recollect the advices of his father, and to consider Nizam ul dien as the cause of all his distress. He immediately began to form schemes in his mind to rid himself of that wicked minister. He for this purpose ordered him to the government of Moultan; but Nizam ul dien perceiving his drift, contrived many delays, that he might get a favourable opportunity to accomplish his villainous intentions. His designs, however, in the mean time reverted upon his own head. The Omrahs dispatched him by poison, Nizam poi-
soned.
some say without the King's knowledge, while others affirm that it was by his authority.

Malleck Jellal ul dien Feroze, the son of Malleck Egherish of Chillige, who was Naib of Sammana, came, by the Sultan's orders, to court, Promotion
at court.
and was honoured with the title of Shaisa Chan, and made Lord of requests, as also Suba of Birren. Malleck Itimer Chigen was promoted to a high office at court, and Malleck Eitumur Surcha was made Vakeel of the empire. These three divided the whole power of the government amongst them, while the King by this time became afflicted with a palsy, by which he lost the use of one side, and had his mouth distorted. Kei Kubad
becomes pa-
ralytic.

Every Omrah of popularity or power, began now to intrigue for the empire, which obliged the friends of the royal family to take His son raise
to the em-
pire.
Keiomourse, a child of three years, son to the reigning emperor, out of the Haram, and to set him upon the throne. The army upon this, split into two factions, who encamped on opposite sides of the city.



A. D. 1286.
Higer. 683.

city. The Turks* espoused the cause of the young King, and the Chilligies, a powerful tribe of Tartars, joined Shaisa Chan, who usurped the throne. Upon the first disturbance, those Turks who had set up the young Prince, jealous of the power of the Chilligies, assembled themselves, and proscribed all the principal Chilligian officers.

Shaisa Chan
rebels.

Jellal ul dien, Shaisa Chan, being the first in that bloody list, immediately rebelled. Himar Chigen had been deputed by the Turkish party, to invite Shaisa to a conference with the sick Sultan, and a plot was formed for his assassination. Shaisa discovering his designs, drew upon the traitor, who came to invite him, and killed him at the door of his tent.

His sons seize
the young
King.

The sons of Jellal ul dien, who were renowned for their valour, immediately put themselves at the head of five hundred chosen horse, and making an assault upon the camp of the Turks, cut their way to the royal tents, which were pitched in the center of the army, and seizing the infant King, carried him, and the son of Malleck ul Omrah, off, in spite of all opposition, to their father. They killed Malleck Eitumur Surcha, who pursued them, with many other men of distinction.

The citizens
of Delhi
take arms.

When this exploit began to be noised abroad in the city, the mob flew immediately to arms. They marched out in thousands, and encamping at the Budaoon gate, prepared to go against Jellal ul dien, and rescue the infant King, for they greatly dreaded the power of the Chilligies, who were a fierce and savage race. Malleck ul Omrah, the old minister, so often mentioned, considering that this step would occasion the assassination of the young king, and of his own

* The Turks and Tartars here mentioned, were mercenaries in the imperial army.

son,



son, who was in their hands, exerted his great influence and authority among the people, and at length prevailed with them to disperse. A. D. 1289.
Higer, 688.

Jellal ul dien, in the mean time, sent an assassin to cut off Kei Kubad, who lay sick, at Kilogurry. The villain found this unfortunate prince dying upon his bed; deserted by all his attendants. He beat out the poor remains of life with a cudgel; then rolling him up in his bed-cloaths, threw him over the window into the river. This assassin was a Turk of some family, whose father had been unjustly put to death by Kei Kubad, and he now had a compleat revenge. Kei Kubad
assassinated.

When this horrid deed was perpetrated, Shaista Chan ascended the throne, and assumed the title of Jellal ul dien, having put an end to the dynasty of Ghor, and commenced that of Chillige. Malleck Chidju, nephew to Sultan Balin, and who was now esteemed the just heir of the empire, was immediately appointed Suba of Kurrah, and sent off to his government. Jellal ul dien marched into the palace, and was proclaimed with great solemnity in the city; and to compleat his villainy, he made away with the young prince, that he might reign with the greater security. Shaista Chan
ascends the
throne.

This great revolution happened in the year six hundred and eighty-seven, the reign of Sultan Kei Kubad being something more than three years; a time long and disastrous, if we look upon the villanies of Nizam ul dien, and the consequent overthrow of the family of Balin.

SECTION



SECTION XII.

The Reign of SULTAN JELLAL UL DIEN Firose of Chillige.

A. D. 1289.
Higer. 688.
Different opi-
nions con-
cerning the
origin of the
tribe of Chil-
lige.

NIZAM UL DIEN AHMUD says in his history, that the tribe of Chillige derived their origin from Calidge Chan. Callidge, continues that writer, having quarrelled with his wife, who was an imperious and vindictive woman, and fearing she would draw the resentment of her brother Chingez Chan upon him, deserted his army as he was passing the mountains of Ghor and Ghirgistan, in his return from the conquest of Iran. Three thousand of his friends followed Calidge, and took possession of those mountains, where they were afterwards joined by many of their countrymen, and even by some of the family of Chingez Chan.

Other historians, with equal improbability, affirm, that we ought to look for the origin of the Chilligies, as far back as Eaphs the son of Noo †, who, say they, had eleven sons, one of whom was called Chillige. But we have reason to think that neither of the accounts is authentic, the one being too modern, and the other too antient, to merit our faith. We hear of this tribe of Chillige in the reigns of Subuctagi, and Mamood of Ghizni, which entirely destroys the former supposition; and we have great doubts concerning the existence of Chillige the son of Eaphs, being persuaded that this idle story took its rise from the natural vanity of nations, in tracing themselves back to remote antiquity.

This tribe however, as we have already observed, inhabited the mountains of Ghor and Ghirgistan, and were a brave and hardy, though

† Japhet, the son of Noah.

barbarous



barbarous race. They make a business of war, and always served as mercenaries any power that chose to employ them. The father of that Shaista Chan, who mounted the throne of Delhi, was Eggherish. He was one of those soldiers of fortune, who subsist by the sword; and raised himself to some rank, in the army of Sultan Balin. His son Firose being a man of genius, was appointed to the government of Samana. He was called from thence, as before related, and usurped the empire. He reserved for some months, the young Prince Keiomours, as a cloak to his villainy; and having established himself upon the throne, he ordered him to be put to death. He was seventy years of age when he mounted the Musnud. Firose, by way of plainness, changed the royal umbrella from red to white; laid entirely aside his cruelty, after the death of the young Prince; and became remarkable for his humanity and benevolence.

A. D. 1288.
Higer. 687.

He murders
the infant
Emperor.

He had no great confidence in the loyalty of the people of Delhi, and therefore resided always at Kilogurry, which he strengthened with works, and adorned with fine gardens, and beautiful walks by the side of the river. The Omrahs following the Sultan's example, built palaces around, so that Kilogurry became known by the name of the new city.

Resides at
Kilogurry.

Eggherish Chan, the Sultan's brother, was appointed Ariz Mumalick, or receiver-general of all petitions to the throne; and the Emperor's eldest son was dignified with the title of Chan Chanan†: The second son, with the title of Arkali Chan; and the third with that of Kuder Chan. They had all governments conferred upon them, and maintained separate households. Chaja Chatire was appointed Vizier, and the old chief magistrate of the city, Malleck ul Omrah, Fuchir ul dien, was continued in his office.

Confers ho-
nours upon
his son.

The citizens of Delhi perceiving the wisdom, lenity, and justice of the King, were gradually weaned from their attachment to the old

Seeks after
popularity.

† Lord of Lords.

VOL. I.

H h

family,



A. D. 1290
Higer. 689.

The nephew
of Sultan Ba-
lin rebels

family, and became friends and supporters of the new government. The Sultan himself was at much pains to cultivate popularity, and for that purpose he gave great encouragement to the learned of that age, who, in return, offered the incense of flattery at the altar of his fame. In the second year of Firose, Malleck Chidju, nephew to Sultan Balin, and the Nabob of Kurrah, in alliance with Halim Chan, Nabob of Oud, assumed the ensigns of royalty, and struck the currency of the country in his own name, which he changed to that of Moghiz ul dien. He brought over to his party all the Rajas and Jagierdars of those parts, and, raising a great army, advanced towards Delhi.

His army de-
feated.

Advices of this insurrection arriving in the capital, the Sultan collected his forces, and marched out to meet the rebels. He sent the Chilligian cavalry, who excelled at the bow, a few miles in his front, under the command of Arkilli Chan his own son. Arkilli encountering the enemy about twelve crores from the city, after an obstinate engagement, defeated them. He took several Omrahs prisoners in the pursuit, whom he mounted upon camels, with branches hung round their necks; and in that plight sent them to the Sultan. When he saw them in this distress, he immediately ordered them to be unbound, to have a change of linen given them, and an elegant entertainment to be provided. He called them before him, and repeated a verse to this purpose, "That evil for evil was easily returned, but he only was great who could return good for evil." He then ordered them to retire, in full assurance of his forgiveness.

He is taken,
but pardon-
ed.

Malleck Chidju, some days after, was taken by the Zemindars, and sent prisoner to the King. Instead of condemning him to death, as was expected, the Sultan gave him a free pardon, and sent him to Moulton, where he had a handsome appointment for life, as prisoner at large. This lenity of the King, gave great umbrage to the Omrahs of Chillige, who addressed him upon the occasion, and advised him to pursue the policy of Sultan Balin, who never pardoned a traitor. They desired, that, at least, a needle should be passed



passed through the eyes of Malleck Chidju, to be an example to others. If that was not done, they averred, that treason would soon raise its head in every quarter of the empire; and, should the Turks once gain the superiority, they would not leave the name of Chillige in Hindostan. The King answered, that what they said was certainly according to the true policy of government; but, my friends, says he, I am now an old man, and I wish to go down to the grave without shedding blood.

A. D. 1290.
Higer. 68.

Clemency of
the Emperor

This behaviour of the Sultan, it must be acknowledged, had soon the effect which the Chilligian chiefs foresaw. Clemency is a virtue which descends from God, but the degenerate children of Hind did not deserve it. There was no security to be found in any place. The streets, the highways, were infested by banditti. House-breaking, robbery, murder, and every other species of villainy, became a business all over the empire. Insurrections were heard of in every province, numerous gangs of robbers stopt all commerce and intercourse, and the Nabobs refused or neglected to send any account of their revenues or administration.

occasions
disturbances.

The Omrahs of Chillige were greatly alarmed at these proceedings, and began to lengthen the tongue of reproach against their Sovereign. They even began to consult about deposing him, and to raise Malleck Tage ul dien Kugi, who was a man of influence, courage, and resolution, to the throne. For this purpose they met one day, at an entertainment in his house; but having intoxicated themselves with wine, they began openly to talk of assassinating the emperor, quarrelling about which of them should have the honour of that undertaking. While they were in this situation, one of the company privately withdrew, and running to the Sultan, repeated very circumstantially every particular of what he had heard. The Sultan immediately ordered a guard to surround the house, who having seized the Omrahs,

The Omrahs
conspire
against him.

H h 2

brought



A. D. 1290.
Higer. 689.

Are disco-
vered and
pardoned.

Remarkable
story of a
Dirvesh.

brought them all before him. He upbraided them with their treason, he drew his sword, and throwing it down upon the ground, challenged the boldest of them to wield it against him. But they fell upon their faces, and remained silent and confounded. One of them however, whose name was Malleck Nuferit, was gifted with more impudence than the rest, and told the King, that "the words of drunkenness were but wind: Where can we ever find so good and gracious a King, if you should be no more? Or where can the King get so faithful servants, were he to condemn us for a little unguarded folly?"

The unguarded Prince was pleased with this, and smiling, called for wine, and gave him another cup with his own hand. He then upbraided the rest for their conduct, advised them to behave better for the future, and dismissed them all with his pardon.

The execution of a Dirvesh is one of the most remarkable events in this reign. The name of the Dirvesh was Seid Molah, and the whole affair has been thus delivered down in history.

Malleck ul Omrah Fuchir ul dien Cutwal, dying about this time, all the great men, who by his interest, held Jagiers and places at court, were deprived of them, and reduced to want. Among other dependants of the venerable Cutwal *, that became destitute by his death, were twelve thousand readers of the Coran †, and some thousands of his Sipais and servants. All these turned their face towards Seid Molah for their maintenance.

His history.

This Seid Molah was a venerable sage, in a mendicant dress, who travelled from Girjan towards the east, where he visited various

* Chief magistrate of the city.

† Each of these was obliged to read the Coran over once a day.

countries,



countries, and men famous for piety and knowledge. He then turned his face towards Hindostan, to visit Shech Ferid ul dien Shuckergunge, a famous poet and philosopher of that age, with whom he resided, some time, in great friendship. But in the reign of Sultan Balin, having an inclination to see Delhi, he took leave of his friend, who advised him to cultivate no intimacy with the great men of the court, otherwise it would prove fatal to him in the end.

A. D. 1290.
Higer. 689.

Seid Molah arriving at Delhi, set up a great academy and house of entertainment for travellers, fakiers and the poor of all denominations, turning none away from his door. Though he was very religious, and brought up in the Mahommedan faith, yet he followed some particular tenets of his own, so that he never attended public worship. He kept no women nor slaves for himself, and lived upon rice only; yet his expences in charity were so great, that, as he never accepted of any presents, men were astonished whence his finances were supplied, and actually believed, that he possessed the art of transmuting other metals into gold. Upon the death of Sultan Balin he launched out more and more in bestowing great sums in charity, and expended a princely revenue in his entertainments, which were now frequented by all the great men of the city; for he made nothing of throwing three or four thousand pieces of gold into the bosom of a noble family in distress. In short, he displayed more magnificence in his feasts than any of the princes of the empire. His charity was so unbounded, that he expended daily, upon the poor, a thousand maunds of flower, five hundred maunds of meat, eighty maunds of sugar, besides rice, oil, butter and other necessities in proportion. The mob, at length, crouded his gates in such numbers, that it was almost impossible to pass that way. In the mean time, the sons of the Emperor and all the princes of the court resorted to him with all their retinues, and spent whole days and nights in innocent festivity and philosophical conversation.

Arrives at
Delhi,

his magni-
fice and
charity.

After



A. D. 1290.
Higer. 689.

After the death of Fuchir ul dien Cutwal, the Dirvesh stretched forth his hand to his numerous dependants, and supported them in plenty and ease.

In the mean time, Cafi Jellal ul dien, a man of an intriguing turbulent disposition, wrought himself into the favour and confidence of Seid Molah, and being endued with art and plausibility of tongue, began to inspire the philosopher with ambitious views. He told him that the people looked upon him as sent by God to deliver the kingdom from the tyranny and oppression of the Chilligies, and to bless Hindostan with a wise and just government.

Aspires to the
throne.

Conspires
against the
King.

The philosopher, in short, suffered his imagination to be deluded by the splendid ideas of royalty, and privately began to bestow titles and offices upon his disciples, and to take other measures to execute his designs. He engaged Beregin Cutwal and Heitai Palwan, two of his particular friends, to join in the King's retinue on Friday as he went to the public mosque, and to assassinate him; while he himself prepared about ten thousand of his adherents to support his usurpation. But one of his followers, understanding that some others of less merit than himself were appointed to be his superiors, became disgusted, went privately to the King, and disclosed to him every particular of the conspiracy.

He is seized,

The King ordered Seid Molah and Jellal ul dien to be immediately seized and brought before him for examination. But they persisted in their innocence, and no other witness appeared against them, which rendering the accusation doubtful, the Sultan ordered a great fire to be prepared in the field of Bahapoor, that they might be put to the ordeal trial. He himself marched out of the city to see the ceremony performed, and ordered a ring to be made round the pile. The fire being kindled, the Sultan commanded Seid
Mola



Mola and the two assassins to be brought, that they might walk ^{A. D. 1200.} through the flames to prove their innocence. Having said their ^{Higer. 689.} prayers they were just going to plunge into the fire, when the Sultan stopped them short, and turning to his ministers, said, "that the nature of fire was to consume, paying no respect to the righteous more than to the wicked. Besides, said he, it is contrary to the Mahomedan law to practise this heathenish superstition."

He therefore ordered Cafi Jellal to Budaoon, and Seid Molah to ^{Ordered to perpetual im-} be thrown into chains in a vault under the palace, and the two men ^{prisonment.} who were to perpetrate the assassination to be put to death. He, at the same time, banished a number of those who were suspected of the conspiracy. When they were carrying Seid Molah through the court to his prison, the King pointed him out to some Collinders who stood near him, and said, "Behold the man who was projecting such evil against us! I therefore leave him to be judged by you, according to his deserts."

At the word, a Collinder whose name was Beri, started forth, and running towards the prisoner began to cut him with a razor. The unfortunate Dirvesh told him to be more expeditious in sending him to God. He then addressed himself to the King, who was looking over the balcony, and said, I am rejoiced that you have thought of putting a period to my life; yet to distress the pious and the innocent is an evil, and be assured that my curse will lie heavy upon you and your unfortunate posterity. The King hearing these words, became pensive and perplexed. His son Arkilli Chan, who hated Seid Molah for the great intimacy between him and his elder brother Chan Chanan, seeing the Emperor's irresolution, beckoned to an elephant rider, who stood in the court mounted, to advance, which accordingly he did, and commanded his elephant to tread ^{Put to a cruel death.} Seid Molah to death.

Zea



A. D. 1201.
Higer. 690.

A prodigy.

Zea ul dien Birni, in his history of Firoze Shaw, informs us that he himself was at that time in Delhi, and that, immediately upon the death of Seid Molah, a black whirl-wind arose, which for the space of half an hour, changed day into night, drove the people in the streets against one another, so that they could scarce grope their way to their own habitations. The same author relates, that no rain fell in these provinces during that year, and the consequence was a most terrible famine, by which thousands daily died in the streets and highways; while whole families drowned themselves in the river. But these were the throes of nature, and not the rage of the elements for Seid Molah. This event happened in the year 690, and the loss of the Dirvesh was much regretted, for many believed him entirely innocent of the charge.

The good
fortune of the
King de-
clines.

The prosperity of the King began visibly to decline, for every day new factions and disputes arose, which greatly disturbed his administration. Private misfortunes pressed hard upon him at the same time; among the number of which was the madness of his eldest son Chan Chanan, heir apparent of the empire. No medicines could cure that prince, and the distemper hourly gaining ground soon terminated in his death.

He marches
to Rintim-
pore.

The King, after the decease of his son, marched his army towards Rintimpore to quell an insurrection in these parts. He left his son Arkilli Chan to manage affairs in his absence. The enemy having retired into the fort of Rintimpore, and the King having reconnoitered the place, despaired of reducing it. He marched towards a small fort called Jain, which he took, then breaking down the temples of Malava, plundered them of some wealth and again returned to Rintimpore. He summoned the fort a second time to surrender, but finding the rebels paid no attention to his threats, he gave orders to undermine the walls. He however changed his resolution, and decamped,



decamped, saying, that he found the place could not be taken without the loss of many lives, and therefore that he would lay aside his designs against it. Malleek Amed Chip, who was one of the pillars of the empire, replied, that Kings in the time of war, should make no account of those things, when compelled to it by justice and the necessity of supporting their authority, which was now plainly the case. The King, in wrath, asked him how he came to think that these were not his sentiments; "but I have often, said he, told you, that now being on the brink of the grave, I am unwilling to entail the curse of widows and orphans upon the reign of a few days." He therefore continued his march to Delhi.

In the year 691, one of the kinsmen of Hallacu Chan *, invaded Hindostan with ten tomans † of Moguls. The Sultan having received advices of the approach of the enemy, collected his army and moved forward to oppose them. When he reached the frontiers of Biraam, he saw the Moguls in front beyond a small river. Both armies encamped for the space of five days upon either side of this stream, during which time their advanced posts skirmished frequently, and many were killed.

The armies at last, by mutual consent, pitched upon an extensive plain where they might have room to contend for the victory. Accordingly on the sixth morning they drew up in order of battle, and closed up the dreadful interval of war. The Moguls, after an obstinate contest were overthrown, many of their chiefs killed, and about a thousand men taken prisoners. Among the latter were two Omrahs and several officers of rank. The Sultan, notwithstanding this victory was afraid to pursue it, and offered them peace, upon condition of their evacuating his dominions. They accordingly

* Grandson of Zingis Chan, and King of Persia.

† A Toman consisted of 10,000 men.



A. D. 1292.
Higer. 692.

gladly accepted of those terms, and presents were exchanged between them. When the Moguls were retreating, Allaghu Chan, grandson to the great Chingez Chan, joined the Sultan with three thousand men. They all became Mussulmen, and their chief was honoured with one of the Sultan's daughters in marriage.

Arkilli Chan
made gover-
nor of La-
hore.

The King, about this time, appointed his son Arkilli Chan, viceroy of Lahore, Moulton and Sind, with whom he left a strong force, and returned himself to his capital. To Allaghu Chan and the rest of the Moguls who had now become true believers, was allotted a certain district near the city, where they built for themselves houses, and raised a considerable town, known by the name of Mogulpurra.

The expedi-
tions of Alla
ul dien.

In the year 692, the Sultan was under the necessity of marching his army again to quell an insurrection about Mindu, which fort he took, and put the enemy to flight. In the mean time, Malleck Alla ul dien, the King's nephew, and governor of Kurrah, requested to be permitted to march against the Hindoos of Belsa who infested his province. Having obtained leave, he marched the same year to Belsa, which he took, and having pillaged the country returned with much spoil, part of which was sent as a present to the Sultan; among other things there was a large brazen idol, which was thrown down, by the Budaoon-gate. The Sultan was greatly pleased with the success and behaviour of Alla ul dien upon this expedition, for which he rewarded him with princely presents, and annexed the subadary of Oud to his former government of Kurrah.

Alla ul dien, upon this preferment, acquainted the King that there were some Rajas of great wealth towards Chinderi, whom, if the Sultan should give him permission, he would reduce to his obedience, and send their spoils to the royal treasury. The King,



through covetousness, consented to this proposal, to which Alla ul dien was moved by the violent temper of his wife Mallike Jehan the Sultan's daughter, who threatened his life. To avoid therefore her resentment and that of her father, he looked round for some remote country which might afford him an asylum. Accordingly, in the year 693, he took leave of the Sultan at Delhi, and proceeding towards Kurrah, took many chiefs of distinction into his service. He marched with eight thousand chosen horse, by the nearest road against Ramdeo, Raja of the Decan, who possessed the wealth of a long series of Kings.

A. D. 1293.
Higer. 693.

Marches into
the Decan.

Alla ul dien, arriving upon the frontiers of the Decan, pressed forward against the capital of Ramdeo's dominions, which, not being fortified, he was in hopes of surprizing. Though this attempt seemed too bold to be attended with success, yet he persisted in his resolution, and by surprizing marches reached Elichpoor, where he made a short halt to refresh his small army. He marched from thence with equal expedition, towards Deogire the capital. Intelligence of Alla's progress coming to the Raja, who, with his son, had been absent upon some service in a distant part of his dominions, he returned with great expedition to intercept the enemy with a numerous army. He accordingly threw himself between Alla and the city, engaged him with consummate bravery, but in the end he was defeated with great loss.

Overthrows
Ramdeo.

This expedition is otherwise recorded by the author of the Tibcat Nafiri. Alla ul dien, says that writer, left Kurrah on pretence of hunting, and having passed through the territories of many petty Rajas, avoided all hostilities, giving out that he had left the Emperor in disgust, and was going to offer his services to the Raja of the Tillingas Ram Chunder, who was the most powerful King in the Decan. Accordingly, after two months march, he arrived

Another account of this expedition.



A. D. 1293.
Higer. 693.

without any remarkable opposition at Elichpoor, from whence, at once changing his course, he decamped in the night, and in two days surprized the city of Deogire the capital of Ramdeo. The Raja himself was in the city, but his wife and his eldest son had gone to worship at a certain temple without the walls.

Ramdeo, upon the approach of Alla, was in the greatest consternation. He however collected three or four thousand citizens and domesticks, engaged Alla ul dien at one of the gates of the city, but being defeated, retired into the citadel. This fort having no ditch, and not being stored with provisions, he had no hopes of defending it long. Alla ul dien immediately invested the place. In the mean time he gave out, that he was only the van-guard of the Emperor's army, who were on full march to the place. This struck universal terror into all the Rajas round, who, instead of joining for the general safety, began to secure themselves. Alla ul dien having pillaged the city and seized upon the merchants, brahmins and principal inhabitants, tortured them for their wealth; while he at the same time carried on the siege of the citadel.

Alla takes
Deogire.

Alla's cruelty.

Ramdeo seeing he must soon be obliged to yield, and imagining that the Emperor intended to make a general conquest of the Decan, endeavoured to procure a peace before any other forces arrived. He therefore wrote after this manner to Alla.

"Your invasion of this country was certainly impolitic and rash, but fortunately for you, having found the city unguarded, you have been permitted to range at large. It is however possible that the Rajas of the Decan, who command innumerable armies, may yet surround you, and not permit one of your people to escape from our dominions alive. Supposing even that you should be able to retreat from hence undisturbed, are not the Rajas of Malava, Candez and



Gundwarra in your way, who have each armies of forty or fifty thousand men? Do you hope they will permit you to escape unmolested, after this perfidious attack on their brethren, in religion and Gods? It is therefore adviseable for you to retire in time, by accepting a small reward, and what spoil you have already got, to indemnify you for your expence and labour."

A. D. 1293.
Higer. 693.

Ramdeo proposes terms of peace,

Malleck Alla ul dien was very glad to accept of those proposals, and having received fifty maunds of gold, a large quantity of pearls and jewels, fifty elephants, and some thousand horses, which were taken in the Rajas stables, he released his prisoners, and promised to abandon the place in the morning of the fifteenth day, from his first entrance.

which Alla accepts.

But when Alla was preparing to retreat, the Raja's eldest son, who had fled with his mother, on the first appearance of the imperial troops, to collect forces, advanced with a numerous army, within a few miles of the city. Ramdeo sent a message to his son, informing him, that peace was concluded, and whatever was done, was done. He therefore ordered him not to open again the door of disturbance, for that he perceived the Turks were a warlike race, whose peace was better than their war. The young Prince however, understanding that his army was thrice the number of the enemy, and expecting hourly to be joined by other Rajas, with numerous forces, listened not to the commands of his father, but wrote to Alla ul dien in these terms:

Ramdeo's son advances with an army.

"If you have any love for life, and desire safety, rush out of this horrible whirlpool, into which you have plunged yourself. Whatever you have plundered and received, you must return, and take your way homeward, rejoicing in your happy escape."

His insolent letter to Alla.

Alla



A. D. 1293.
H. ger. 693.

Alla ul dien, upon reading this insolent letter, kindled the fire of rage, and blackening the face of the messenger, hooted him out of the city. He left Malleck Nuscrit to invest the citadel with a thousand horse, and immediately marched with the rest of his army, to attack the Raja's son, and drew up in the front of his camp.

Is over-
thrown.

The Hindoo did not decline the offered battle. He drew forth his numerous squadrons, and the battle commenced with such violence, that the stout heart of Alla ul dien began to quake for the victory. His troops began to fall back on all sides. In the mean time Malleck Nuscrit having learned by his scouts, the situation of affairs, left the citadel without orders, and galloping up to the field of battle, with his thousand horse, changed the fortune of the day. The dust having prevented the enemy from discovering the force of Nuscrit, some person cried out, that the Turkish army, of whom they had been told, was arrived. This spread instantly a panic through the Hindoo ranks, and they at once turned their face to flight. Alla ul dien did not think proper to pursue them far, but immediately returned into the city, and invested the citadel.

Cruelty of
the Turks.

A scene of cruelty and horror now commenced. The Turks, enraged at the perfidy of the Hindoos, for their breach of the treaty, began to spread fire and sword through the city; from which no discipline could restrain them. Several of the Raja's kindred, who had been taken prisoners, were in chains, thrown down in sight of the enemy. The Raja, in the mean time, sent express upon express, to hasten the succours which he expected from the Raja of Kilbirga, Tillingana, Malava, and Candez: but was informed, that there remained no provisions in the place, for that a great number of bags, in which they had reckoned upon rice, had been found, upon examination, to be salt.

The



The Raja was greatly perplexed; he commanded that this should be concealed from the troops, and began a second time to propose a treaty with Alla ul dien. A. D. 1293. Higer. 693. The Raja in great distress.

“It must be known to you, said the Raja, O! my lord, that your well-wisher, Ramdeo, had no hand in the late quarrel. If my son, in the way of folly, and the pride of youth, exalted the spear of valour and hostility, let not your resentment be kindled against me for his rashness.” Proposes terms.

Ramdeo told the messenger privately, that there was no provisions in the place, and that if the enemy should persist a few days, they must be informed of their distress, which would inevitably bring on the ruin of the whole. For, said the Raja, supposing we should be able to hold out the place against the assaults of the enemy, yet famine cannot be withstood; and there is now scarce six days provision left. Use then every art, and take any means, to persuade the army of Islam †, to evacuate the country.

But Malleck Alla ul dien, from the behaviour of Ramdeo, perceived the true cause of his proposals, and therefore started every day some new difficulty to retard the treaty, till the garrison was in the utmost distress. But at length it was concluded, according to our author, upon the following almost incredible terms; that Alla ul dien should receive, upon consideration of evacuating the country, six hundred maunds, of pure gold, according to the weights of the Decan ‡, seven maunds of pearl, two maunds of diamonds, rubies, emeralds, and sapphires, one thousand maunds of silver, four thousand pieces of silk, and a long list of other precious commodities that surpass all belief. This ransom was not only required, but also the cession of Elichpoor, and its dependancies, where Alla might leave

† That is the Mahomedans.

‡ The maund of the Decan is 25^{lb}. avoirdupoise.

a small



A. D. 1294.
Hig. r. 694.

a small garrison to collect the revenues, which should remain there unmolested.

Alla retreats
with an im-
mense trea-
sure.

Malleck Alla ul dien, having settled affairs to his satisfaction, released all his prisoners, and marched in triumph out of the city with his plunder, and proceeded on his way homeward, on the twenty-fifth day after his taking the city. He conducted his retreat with such surprising address, that he opened his way through extensive and powerful kingdoms; through Malava, Conduana, Candez, and others, though he was surrounded by numerous armies, who admiring his order and resolution, made but faint and irresolute attacks, which served only to adorn his triumph. We may here justly remark, that in the long volumes of history, there is scarcely any thing to be compared to this exploit, whether we regard the resolution in forming the plan, the boldness of the execution of it, or the fortune which attended the attempt. We cannot help to lament, that a man formed for such great exploits, should not be actuated by better motives than rapine, violence, and the thirst of gain.

The Sultan
suspects Alla
of treasonable
designs.

When Alla ul dien marched to Deogire, all communication with Kurrah being stopt, no news was heard of him for some months. The person, whom he left his deputy, to make the King easy, wrote, that he had accounts of his being busy in the conquest of Chinderi, and amused him every day with false intelligence. But as the King, for the space of six months, had received no letters from under his own hand, he began to suspect treason; and in the year 695, under a pretence of hunting, ordered out his retinue, and proceeded towards Gualier, where he encamped, and built a Choultry, inscribing a verse to this purpose, over the door.---“ I who press with my foot the celestial pavement, what fame can I acquire by a heap of stones and mortar? No! I have joined these broken stones together, that, perhaps,



perhaps, under their shade, the weary traveller, or broken-hearted, A. D. 1295.
Higer. 695.
may find repose."

In the mean time Firose Shaw received private intelligence, that Alla ul dien
Alla ul dien had conquered Deogire, and had acquired there such returns to-
wards Kur-
rah.
wealth, as had never been possessed by an Emperor of Delhi, and
that he was now upon his march towards Kurrah. The King was
greatly pleased with this intelligence, and reckoned upon the spoil,
as if already in his own treasury. But men of more wisdom thought
otherwise, and justly concluded, that it was not to fill the royal cof-
fers, as Alla ul dien, without the King's authority, had undertaken
such a daring expedition. They however waited to see the event,
without informing the King of their suspicions. The King having
one day assembled his council, and told them, that Alla ul dien was
now on his march to Kurrah with immense plunder, requested their The Sultan
consults his
council con-
cerning Alla.
advice whether it was most prudent to remain where he was, and
command Alla to his presence, to march towards him, or to return
to Delhi.

Malleck Ahmed Chip, who was renowned for his wisdom and pene-
tration, expressed his suspicions to the King, in a rational and plausible
manner. He advised the Sultan, at the same time, to advance with
his army towards Chinderi, and to encamp in the way between Alla They differ
in their opi-
nions.
ul dien and Kurrah. This, said he, will discover Alla's intentions,
before he has time to augment his army. Ahmed Chip added fur-
ther, "that, upon the appearance of the imperial army, it was highly
probable, that the troops of Alla ul dien, being laden with spoil,
and within their own country, would not chuse to hazard the loss of
it by an action; but would rather endeavour to secure their wealth
among the mountains. That, by this means, Alla ul dien would be
deserted by the greatest part of his small army, which would oblige
him to think of nothing but peace, and to lay all his wealth at the



A. D. 1295.
Higer. 695. foot of the throne. That the King in that case might take all the gold, jewels, and elephants, permitting him to retain the remainder for himself, and either leave him his government, or carry him to Delhi, according to the royal pleasure."

Malleck Fuchier ul dien Kudgi, though he was sensible of the prudence of this advice, yet turning his eyes upon the Emperor, he perceived he did not at all approve of it; and therefore began to this effect: "The news of Alla ul dien's return, the amount of his plunder, and the truth of his conquest, has not yet been confirmed but by flying reports, which we all know are often vague and extravagant. Supposing even that this account is true, is it not natural to imagine, that when he shall hear of the approach of the imperial army, that the fear of false accusation, or evil designs against him, will prevail on him to retreat among the mountains? From whence, as the rainy season is at hand, it will be impossible to dislodge him. Let us not therefore cast off our shoes, before we reach the river, but wait till Alla shall arrive at Kurrah. If then it shall appear, that he cherishes his treasonable views, one assault of the imperial army will crush his ambition."

Malleck Ahmed Chip, having heard this perfidious advice, was kindled into generous resentment, and replied; "The time passes,—As soon as Alla ul dien shall have escaped us, will he not proceed by the way of Oud to Lucknouti, where his treasure will soon enable him to raise such an army as neither you nor I will be able to oppose? O shame! that men should know better, yet not have the honesty to give salutary advice."

The Sultan was displeased with those words, and spoke thus to the Omrahs who stood near him. "Malleck Chip does always ill offices to Alla ul dien. He endeavours to raise my suspicion and resentment



ment against him; but such private rancour shall have no weight with the King; I am so well assured of the loyalty of Malleck Alla ul dien, whom I have nursed in my bosom, that I should sooner believe treason in my son than in him."

A. D. 1295.
Higer. 695.

Malleck Ahmed, upon this, shut the door of argument, and, rising with some emotion, walked out, striking one hand upon the other, and repeating a verse to this purpose. "When the sun of prosperity is eclipsed, no advice can enlighten the mind." The King bestowing great commendations on Kudgi, marched back with his army to Delhi.

Not many days after the Sultan's arrival, the address of Alla ul dien was brought to him, setting forth, that "he was the King's slave, and that all his own wealth was consecrated to him; that being wearied by a tedious march, he begged some repose at Kurrah. That he intended to kiss the footstool of the throne, but that, knowing he had some enemies at court, who might have, in his absence, defamed him, and deprived him of his majesty's favour, he, and the chiefs who accompanied him in the expedition, in which he was sensible he had exceeded his orders, were apprehensive that some punishment might be inflicted upon them. That he therefore requested to have a letter of grace, to assure him and his followers of perfect safety, under the royal protection." The King having received this address, expressed great joy, and entirely laid aside all suspicions of Alla ul dien. He ordered a letter full of kindness, and the most solemn assurances of protection, to be wrote to him, and dispatched by the hands of two messengers of distinction.

Alla ul dien's
infidious
message to
the King.

which de-
ceives the
Sultan.

In the mean time Alla ul dien was preparing to retreat to Bengal. He was now joined by all the Zemindars of the neighbouring districts, who enlisted themselves under his fortunate banners. The messen-

Alla prepares
to retreat to
Bengal.



A. D. 1295.
Higer, 695.

gers perceived plainly his intentions, but they were detained, and watched so strictly, that they could send no advices to the King. Malleck Almas, who was also son in law and nephew to Sultan Firose, in the mean time received advices from his brother Alla ul dien, "That it was now become public at Kurrah, that the King intended certainly to take his life, for proceeding to Deogire contrary to his orders. That he repented the occasion, and had taken his Majesty's displeasure, which to him was worse than death, so much to heart, that he was afraid excess of sorrow would put an end to his melancholy life: He therefore requested, that his brother should inform him, before the King put his design in execution, that he might either take poison, or look out for a place of security."

His insidious
letters to the
court.

The Sultan
inveigled to
proceed to
Kurrah.

Letters to the same purpose were, day after day, wrote to his brother, Almas Beg, who being in the plot, was constantly at court, and shewed them to the King, seemingly distracted, lest his brother should lay violent hands upon himself, or fly his country. He used a thousand delusive arts to inveigle the King, who no less feared the loss of the treasure than his nephew's life, to Kurrah. The old man, at last, took the golden bait, and embarked with a thousand horse, and a small retinue, on the Ganges, ordering Malleck Ahmed Chip to follow with the army by land.

Alla ul dien, hearing of the Sultan's departure from Delhi, crossed the Ganges with his army, and encamped near Mannickpoor, upon the opposite bank. When, upon the seventeenth of Ramzaan, the Sultan's umbrella appeared in sight, Alla ul dien drew out his army, on pretence of doing him honour, and sent his brother Almas Beg, who had come on before to concert measures to introduce the King into camp. This artful traitor represented to the Sultan, that if he should take the thousand horse with him, Alla ul dien might be alarmed; for that some bad people had confirmed him so strongly in



in his fears, that all he could say to him was not sufficient entirely <sup>A. D. 1295.
Higer. 695.</sup> to expell his suspicions.

The poor old King suspecting nothing of this horrid treachery, <sup>Perfueded to
leave his re-
tinue behind
him.</sup> from a man whom he had cherished from his infancy in his bosom, gave into this proposal. He ordered a few of his select friends into his own boat, and commanded the fleet to remain some distance behind. When they came near the camp, Almas Beg again opened the mouth of delusion, and told the King, that his brother seeing so many men in compleat armour, might possibly be startled; that therefore as he had taken such ridiculous notions into his head, which no body could remove, it were better to avoid the least appearances to favour them. The weak King might have seen that this was overdoing the matter, but perhaps he thought it now too late to reveal his suspicions, being near the skirts of the camp, and that an open confidence might be his best security. He therefore ordered all his attendants to unbuckle their armour, and lay their weapons aside. Malleck Charram, Vakiel of the Empire, opposed this step with great vehemence, for he plainly saw into the bottom of their perfidy. But the traitor had such a soft and plausible tongue, that at last he yielded, though with great reluctance.

They had now reached the landing place, and Alla ul dien appeared upon the bank with his attendants, whom he ordered to halt. He himself advancing alone met the Sultan just after he had landed upon the beach, and fell down prostrate at his feet. The old man in a familiar manner tapped him on the cheek, and raising him up, embraced him, saying, "I who have brought you up from your infancy, and cherished you with a fatherly affection, holding you dearer in my sight, if possible, than my own offspring, and who have not yet washed the odors of your infant smiles from my garments, how could you imagine I should entertain a thought to your



A. D. 1295.
Higer. 695.

Barbarously
assassinated.

prejudice." Then taking him by the hand he was leading him back into the royal barge, when the hard-hearted villain made a signal to his assassins who stood behind. Mamood ben Salim rushing immediately forward, wounded the King with his sword in the shoulder. The unfortunate Monarch run forward to gain the barge, crying, " Ah! villain Alla ul dien, what dost thou?" but before he had reached the boat, another of the assassins whose name was Achtiar ul dien Hoor, coming up, seized the old man and throwing him on the ground, barbarously cut off his head, just as the sun sunk in the west as if to avoid the horrid sight *.

Reflexions
upon his
death.

All his attendants were then murdered. They fixed the venerable head of their lord upon the point of a spear, and carried it through the camp and city, as a bloody spectacle to the gazing rabble. But the rabble were shocked at the sight, and were heard to cry: " Behold the reward of him who fixeth his mind upon this perfidious world: who nourisheth his relations with the blood of his liver, in the arms of kindness, and in their gratitude confideth his strength."

The miserable
end of the
assassins.

Alla ul dien immediately exalted the white umbrella over his own head; but the vengeance of heaven soon after fell heavy on all who were concerned in the assassination of the late King. They relate, that when Alla ul dien visited a reverend sage named Shech Karrick Mudgzu, who is buried at Kurrah, and whose tomb is held sacred to this day; he rose from his pillow and repeated an extempore verse to the following purpose: " He cometh, but his head shall fall in the boat, and his body shall be cast into the Ganges;" which they say was explained a few hours after by the death of the unfortunate King, whose head was thrown into the boat upon that occasion. Mamood, the son of Salem, one of the assassins, about a year after died of a horrid leprosy which dissolved the flesh piece by piece from

* He reigned seven years and some months.



his bones. Achtiar Hoor, the other assassins, fared no better, for he became mad, crying out incessantly, that Sultan Jellal ul dien Firose was cutting off his head. Thus the wretch suffered a thousand deaths in imagination, before he expired. Almas Beg and others who planned this horrid tragedy, in hopes of great advancement, fell into such a scene of misfortunes, that in the space of four years there was no remembrance of them but their villainies upon the face of the earth.

A.D. 1295.
Higer. 693.

SECTION XIII.

The Reign of ALLA UL DIEN, called SECUNDER SANI †.

INTELLIGENCE of the murder of the King having reached Ahmed Chip, who was advancing with the army, he retreated to Delhi. Malleke Jehan, the wife of Jellal ul dien, and Queen regent, imprudently and without consulting the Omrahs, raised to the diadem Ruckun ul dien, her youngest son; Arkilli Chan, the elder son, being then at Moulton. She accompanied him from Kilogurry to Delhi, and placed him on the throne in the green palace, though as yet but a boy, and altogether unacquainted with the affairs of state. She also divided the provinces among her own party. Arkilli Chan, who was the true heir to the Empire, and possessed all the qualities of a King, was greatly afflicted at this news, but thought proper, for the present, to remain at Moulton.

Ruckun ul
dien raised by
his mother to
the throne.

Malleck Alla ul dien, upon receiving intelligence of those transactions at Delhi, laid aside his intended expedition to Bengal, and prepared to march to the capital, though it was then the rainy season. He raised a great army in his government, and conferred titles and rewards upon his friends. Almas Beg was honoured with the title of Elich Chan,

Alla ul dien
prepares to
march to
Delhi.

† Alexander the second.

Malleck



A. D. 1295.
Higer. 695.

Malleck Nuferit of Jallifiri with that of Nuferit Chan, Malleck Hizi-ber ul dien was distinguished with the name of Ziffer Chan, and Sinjer, Alla's wife's brother, received the title of Aetah Chan. They all received jagiers upon their advancement to those honours. The Sultan, by the advice of Nuferit Chan, distributed presents among the army, and wherever he encamped he amused himself with throwing gold from a sling among the people. This liberality, in a short time, brought a world of soldiers under his banners.

The Sultan in
great per-
plexity.

Mallecke Jehan was thrown into great perplexity, by the advices she daily received concerning Alla. She dispatched an express to Moulton, for her son Arkilli Chan; but that prince returned for answer, that now the time was lost, for that before he could arrive, the imperial troops would join the enemy; that therefore his coming would be of no real service: That the stream might have been diverted at its source, but when it became a river, no dams could oppose it.

Alla sits down
before Delhi,

Sultan Alla ul dien made no delay on his march. He crossed the Jumna, and encamped without the north-east gate of Delhi. Ruckun ul dien fluttering like a solitary fowl, collected all his forces, and marching out of the city, paraded it before the enemy. But when he saw them preparing for battle, he retreated into the city. He was that night deserted by a great number of Omrahs, who went over with their forces to Alla ul dien. Ruckun ul dien saw now no safety but in flight. Taking therefore his mother, Haram and treasure with him, he set out for Moulton, accompanied by Malleck Rijib, Cuttub ul dien Olavi, Ahmed Chip and Amir Jellal Malleka.

which sub-
mits.

The citizens, after the departure of the young Sultan, crowded forth to pay their respects to Alla ul dien. He immediately ordered



ordered the current money to be struck in his name, and making a ^{A. D. 1295.} ^{Hijer. 695.} triumphant entry into Delhi, in the latter end of the year 695, ascended the throne, and kept his court at the red palace. He exhibited shows, and made grand festivals, encouraging every species of riot and debauchery; which so pleased the unthinking rabble, that they soon lost all memory of their former King, and the horrid villainy of the reigning Emperor. He who ought to have been hooted with detestation, became the object of admiration to those who could not see the darkness of his deeds, through the splendor of his magnificence.

Whilst he gained, by these means, popularity among the vulgar, he secured the great with titles, and bought the covetous with gold. The Vizier was bestowed upon Chaja Chetier, a man renowned for ^{Promotions.} his virtue in those degenerate times. Sidder Jehan Arif was made Cazai Mumaleck *, and Omdat ul Muluck Eiz ul dien was raised to the office of Divan Incha †, being a man of great learning and genius, and a favourite of the King. Naserit Chan was appointed Cutwal ‡ of Delhi, Malleck Fuchir ul dien Kudgi was raised to the dignity of Amir Daad §, and Ziffer Chan to that of Ariz Mumaleck ||, with many others to high offices, which are too tedious to mention.

Alla ul dien having advanced six months pay to his whole army, ^{Alla sends an} ^{army against} ^{the sons of his} ^{predecessor.} began to concert means to extirpate the race of Firose Shaw. He dispatched Elich Chan and Ziffer Chan with forty thousand horse towards Moulton, who, upon their arrival, invested that city. After a siege of two months, the citizens and troops betrayed the cause of

* An office somewhat similar to that of our Lord high Chancellor.

† Principal Secretary of state.

‡ Chief magistrate of the city.

§ The same with our Lord Chief Justice of the pleas.

|| Intelligencer of the empire.



A. D. 1295. Arkilli Chan, and gave up the place to the enemy. The two unfor-
 Higer. 695. tunate brothers being driven to great distress, surrendered themselves
 They are taken, at last to Elich Chan, upon promise of personal safety.

The object of the expedition being thus compleated, Elich Chan wrote the Sultan an account of his victory, which was read in all the public pulpits after divine worship, and great rejoicings were ordered to be made upon the occasion. Elich Chan proceeded in triumph with his army and state prisoners to Delhi. He was met on his way by Nusrit Chan Cutwal, who had been sent by the Sultan to put out the eyes of the prisoners. This cruel order was executed upon the two princes, upon Alighu Chan the grandson of the great Chingez, upon Malleck Ahmed Chip, and others of less note, and all their effects confiscated. The two unfortunate princes were then confined in the fort of Haffi, where, soon after, they were both
 blinded,
 and assassinated.
 assassinated; and Mallecke Jehan, with all the ladies of the former Sultan's seraglio and his other children confined at Delhi.

A new vizier. In the second year of this reign Chaja Chitier, not falling entirely in with the Sultan's policy, was dismissed from the vizarit, which was conferred upon Nusrit Chan. This minister redemanded all the sums which the Sultan, upon his accession, had bestowed upon the nobility and people, which occasioned great disgust and disturbance.

Invasion of the Moguls. During these transactions, advices came to Delhi, that Dova Chan King of Maver ul nere, had sent an army of one hundred thousand Moguls, with a design to conquer Moulton, Punjab and Sind: That they were advancing with great expedition, carrying all before them with fire and sword. The Sultan immediately ordered Elich Chan and Ziffer Chan, with a great force to expell them. The two armies having met in the districts of Lahore, a bloody conflict ensued,



fued, in which the Moguls were defeated, with the loss of twelve thousand men, and many of their principal officers, besides a number of prisoners of all ranks, who were put to the sword some days after, without sparing the poor women and children who had been taken in the Mogul camp.

These two victories raised the fame of the Emperor's arms to a high pitch of reputation, established his authority at home, and overawed his foreign enemies. The Sultan about this time, by the advice of his brother Elich Chan, seized upon many Omrahs, who, in the late revolution, taking advantage of the distresses of Arkilli Chan, Ruckun ul dien and the Queen, had extorted great sums of money for their services. He ordered the extortioners to be blinded, and their estates to be confiscated, which brought great wealth into the treasury.

In the beginning of the year 697, Elich Chan and Nuferit Chan were sent with a great army to reduce Guzerat. They accordingly laid waste that country with death and rapine, took the capital city Narwalla, which was deserted by Raja Kirren, who fled and took protection under Ramdeo, Raja of Deogire, in the Decan. By the aid of that prince he soon after returned and took possession of Buckelana, one of the districts of Guzerat, bordering upon Ramdeo's dominions. But his wives, children, elephants, baggage and treasure fell into the hands of the enemy when he fled.

Nuferit Chan, with a part of the army, proceeded then to Cambaat, which being a rich country and full of merchants, yielded a prodigious treasure to those sons of cruelty and rapine. When they had sufficiently glutted their avarice and quenched their thirst for blood, they appointed Subas to the provinces, and leaving part of the army for their defence, returned with their plunder towards Delhi.



A.D. 1297.

Higer. 697.

A mutiny in
the army,

The two generals having on the march, made a demand of the fifth of the spoil from the troops, besides what they had already extorted from them, a mutiny arose in the camp. Mahummud Shaw, general of the mercenary Moguls, with many other chiefs, at the head of their several divisions, attacked Malleck Eiz ul dien, the brother of Naserit Chan, and having slain him and a number of his people, continued their march. Elich Chan fled in the disguise of a footman, to the tent of Naserit Chan. The mutineers rushing in, killed the Sultan's nephew, whom he had left upon the couch asleep, supposing him to be Elich Chan.

quelled.

Naserit Chan immediately ordered the drums of war to be beat and the trumpets to be sounded. All who had not been concerned in the mutiny imagined that the enemy was coming upon them, and quickly formed the line. The mutineers divided and dispersed themselves all over the camp, and escaping in the confusion, fled by different routs, to a place of rendezvous. They were however closely pursued the next day, and forced to retreat with some loss, to the districts of the Raja of Rintimpore, where they took protection. Elich Chan continued then his march to Delhi.

The Sultan's
abominable
lust.

Sultan Alla ul dien, upon seeing Cumladè, the captive wife of the Raja of Guzerat, who, for her beauty, wit and accomplishments, was the flower of Hindostan, took her in marriage. But this did not satisfy his abominable lusts. Chaja Cafur, a slave who had been taken on that expedition, engaged his unnatural passion, which he publicly indulged to the disgrace and debasement of human nature.

His cruelty.

Naserit Chan, by the Sultan's order, basely massacred all the families of those Moguls or others, who had been concerned in the late mutiny. He pitied not the weeping mothers, nor the smiling infants who clung to their breasts. This was a new species of tyranny at

Delhi,



Delhi, and occasioned some private murmuring, but those slaves possessed not the virtue or bravery to shake off the tyrant.

About this time, Jildoo, a Mogul chief, and his brother, came down with a considerable force, and took the fort of Seostan. Ziffer Chan marched against him, and having invested the place, he took it. Jildoo, and about two thousand Moguls, were taken prisoners, and sent in chains to Delhi. But Ziffer Chan had distinguished himself so much as a brave commander in this expedition, that his fame awakened the jealousy of the King. He therefore designed to deprive him of his government, but was prevented from this measure, by a great invasion of Moguls, under Cuttuligh Chaja, the son of Dova Chan, King of Maverulnere. The army of the invaders consisted of two hundred thousand horse, and they promised to themselves the entire conquest of Hindostan. Cuttuligh, accordingly, took possession of all the countries beyond the Sind in his march, and protected them from all violence. He then crossed the river, and proceeded to Delhi without opposition, Ziffer Chan retreating with his army before him.

The whole country, in terror of the Moguls, crowded into the city. The crowd became so great, that the streets were rendered impassable, and all business and communication was interrupted. This however was but the beginning of their misfortunes. In the space of a few days, the consumption being great, and no supplies procured, a dreadful famine began to rage, and distraction to stare in every countenance.

The Sultan, upon this pressing occasion, called a council of his Omrahs, and, having regulated his plan of action, prepared for battle, notwithstanding they all endeavoured to dissuade him from it. He left the care of the city to Alla ul Malleck, marched out at the Budaoon gate, with three hundred thousand horse, and two thousand seven

A. D. 1298.

Higer. 692.

Invasion of

the Moguls.

They besiege
Delhi.The Sultan
marches out
against them.

A. D. 1798. seven hundred elephants, besides foot without number. Hedrew up
Hger. 698. in order of battle on the plains, beyond the suburbs; where the ene-
my were already formed to receive him. From the time that first
the spears of Islam† were exalted in Hindostan, two such mighty
armies had not joined in fight.

A battle.

Sultan Alla ul dien gave the command of his right wing to Ziffer Chan, the greatest general of that age, where all the troops of Pun-
jaab, Moulton, and Sind, were posted. The left was intrusted to
his brother Elich Chan, and to Akit Chan his brother in law. The
Sultan posted himself in the center, with twelve thousand independant
volunteers, who were mostly gentlemen of ruined families, and sol-
diers of fortune. With the choice of his elephants, he formed a
tremendous line in his front, and he supported his rear with another
chosen body of cavalry, under Naserit Chan. Ziffer Chan began
the action with great impetuosity on the right, and breaking with his
elephants, the enemy's line, commenced a dreadful slaughter, and
bore them like a torrent before him. Inclining then to the left, he
pressed upon their flank, and put their whole army to flight, before
the action was well begun in the center.

The Moguls
overthrown.

Ziffer Chan
pressing too
hard upon
the enemy,

The Sultan, seeing the victory compleat, ordered Elich Chan, who
commanded on the left, to advance and pursue the enemy. But the
perfidious man, jealous of the glory of Ziffer Chan, stopt at a small
distance, while Ziffer Chan continued the slaughter, for upwards of
thirty miles. One of the Mogul chiefs, who commanded the left,
seeing Ziffer Chan was not supported, rallied with ten thousand
horse, and sending advice to Cuttuligh Chaja, he also returned with
ten thousand more, and attacked Ziffer in the rear. The brave ge-
neral saw into his error, but it was now too late to retreat. He drew
up his troops, which were not half the enemy's number, divided into

† The Mahommedans.

two



two squadrons, and again renewed the conflict, exhibiting wonders by his own valour. At last his horse's leg being cut off by a sabre, he fell to the ground. He however rose again, seized a bow and quiver, and being a dexterous archer, sent death on the wings of his arrows. The most part of his men were, by this time, either killed or fled; and Cuttiligh Chaja, admiring his bravery, called out to him to submit, and his valour should be rewarded with such honours as he deserved. Ziffer Chan replied sternly, "I know no greater honour than to die in discharging my duty." Then he began to deal his arrows around. Cuttiligh Chan, upon this, ordered a party of horse to surround him, and endeavour to take him alive; but Ziffer refused to submit, and was at last cut in pieces, with a few trusty servants who stood by him to the last.

A. D. 1298.
Higer, 698.

is defeated
and slain.

This advantage however did not dispel the fears of the Moguls. They continued their retreat, and evacuated Hindostan with all expedition. The bravery of Ziffer Chan became famous among the Moguls. When their horses started, or were unruly, they used wantonly to ask them, whether they saw the ghost of Ziffer Chan? Sultan Alla ul dien, it is said, esteemed the death of this great general, as a second victory, and could not help expressing his satisfaction upon the occasion; and thus displayed his own base ingratitude, for that brave life which had been thrown away in his unworthy service. Great rejoicings were made at Delhi, to celebrate the victory; and the principal officers were rewarded with titles and governments, according to their behaviour and interest at court. Some who had behaved ill, were disgraced, particularly one Omrah, who was led upon an ass all round the city.

The Moguls
retreat.

In the third year of the reign of Alla, when prosperity shone upon his arms, he began to form some extraordinary projects. One of these was the formation of a new system of religion, that, like Mahommed,

Extraordinary
schemes of
the Sultan.



A. D. 1298.
Higer. 698.

hommed, he might be held in veneration by posterity. He often consulted upon this scheme Elich Chan, Nacerit Chan, and Akit Chan, over a bottle; from which we may suppose he had no design to prohibit the use of wine. His other design was equally romantic. He proposed to leave a viceroy in Hindostan, and, like the great Secunder, to undertake the conquest of the world. In consequence of this project, he assumed the title of Aescunder Sani †, which was struck upon the currency of the empire.

His ignorance
of letters.

Notwithstanding these lofty ideas, Alla ul dien was so illiterate, that he even did not possess the common knowledge of reading and writing; yet he was so obstinate in his ridiculous opinions, that men of learning, who disdained to prostitute their judgment, avoided the court, or stood silent in his presence. There were not however wanting slaves, who, though they knew better, extolled his every word to the skies, and seemed to feed upon his crude imaginations.

Alla ul Mu-
luck's advice
to the King.

Alla ul Muluck, the Cutwal || of the city, who was an old man, and so fat that he was not able to attend the court above once a month, being one day sent for by the King, to give his advice about the execution of his religious project, he determined, however fatal the consequences might be, to oppose every measure against the doctrine of the Mahommedan faith, and to dedicate the few years he had to live, by the course of nature, to martyrdom. With this firm resolution he waited upon the King, whom he found drinking wine with a great number of his principal Omrahs. The King beginning to confer with Muluck upon the occasion, the old man told him, he had something to say to him in private, and would be glad he should order the wine and the company away. The King smiled, and desired all the company to retire except four.

† Alexander the Second.

|| The same with our Lord Mayor.



The old Cutwal then fell upon his face, and having kissed the ground at his feet, rose up and thus spoke. "O King! Religion is the law of God, by his spirit inspired in his prophets, nor depends it upon the opinions of mortals. We are taught by his word to believe, that the spirit of prophecy ended with Mahommed, the last and greatest messenger of God. Since this therefore is known to great and small, to all nations and degrees of people, should your intentions against their faith be once known, it is impossible to conceive what hatred should rise against you, and what blood and disturbance must ensue. It is therefore adviseable, that you should craze with the chissel of reason, those conceptions, from the surface of your blessed mind, as the accomplishment of your intention exceeds all mortal power. Did not Chingez* the most powerful of monarchs, and his successors, labour for ages to subvert our faith, that they might establish their own? What rivers of blood were spilt in the contest, till at length the spirit of truth prevailed, and they became profelytes to that religion which they had laboured so long to destroy!"

A. D. 1298.
Higer. 698.

Against his
scheme of a
new religion.

The Sultan having listened with attention, replied, "What you have said is just, and founded on friendship and reason. I will for ever lay aside all thoughts of this scheme, which has so long engaged my attention. But what do you think of my project of universal conquest?"

Malleck Alla ul Muluck answered, "Some Kings in former ages, formed the same great resolution which your Majesty does at present, and your power, personal bravery, and wealth, gives you at least equal hopes of success. But the times are not so favourable, and the government of Hindostan seems not to stand upon so firm a basis, as to support itself in your absence. Perfidy and ingratitude daily appear. Brothers become traitors to one another, and children against

Against his
project of
universal
conquest.

* Zingis Chan.

VOL. I.

M m

their



A D. 1298.
Higer. 698.

their parents conspire. How much is this degenerate age unlike to the virtuous times of Aescunder? Men were then endued with honourable principles, and the cunning and treachery of the present times were then held in utter abomination. Your Majesty has no counsellors like Aristotalice †, who kept, by his wisdom and policy, not only his own country in peace and security, but brought other nations, by voluntary consent, under his master's protection. If your Majesty can put equal confidence in your Omrahs, and can depend so much upon the love of your people, as Aescunder, you may then carry your scheme into execution; if not, we cannot well reconcile it to reason."

The King
enquiring
how he should
employ his
power,

The King, after musing awhile, said, "What you have told me bears the face of sincerity and truth. But what availeth all this power in armies, in wealth, and in kingdoms, if I content myself with what I already possess; nor employ it in acquiring conquest and glory?"

is advised to
conquer the
unsubdued
provinces of
Hindostan.

Alla ul Muluck replied, "That there were two undertakings in which his treasure might be expended to good purpose. The first was, the conquest of the southern kingdoms of Hindostan, such as Rintimpore, Chitore, Jalore, Chunderi, and Malava; and the second, the reduction of all the western provinces which had been invaded by the Moguls, such as Limghan, Cabul, Ghizni, Toor, and Chorraflan. This, said the Cutwal, would secure the peace of Hindostan, and procure to the King immortal honour, in bestowing happiness upon his people; a thing greater in itself, than if he should consume the world in the flames of war. But even to succeed in this project, it is requisite that the Sultan should abstain from excess of wine, and from luxurious pleasures."

The Sultan
rewards the
Cutwal.

Sultan Alla ul dien, contrary to the old man's expectations, took all this advice in good part, and, praising him for his fidelity, pre-

† Aristotle.

fented



presented him with a royal chelak, ten thousand rupees, two horses ca-
 parisoned, and two villages in freehold. The other Omrahs, who,
 though they themselves wanted the virtue or resolution to speak their
 minds, were extremely pleased with the Cutwal, and sent him also
 presents to a great amount.

The King, in the year 699, according to the advice of Malleck
 Alla ul Muluck, called Elich Chan, from Samana, Nuferit Chan,
 from Kurrah, and others from their respective Subadaries, and sent
 them with a great army, against the Raja of Rintimpore. They soon
 took the fort of Jain, and afterwards invested the capital. Nuferit
 Chan advancing near the wall, was crushed to death by a stone from
 an engine. And the Raja at the same time, sallying with forty thou-
 sand men, drove Elich Chan back to Jain with great loss.

A. D. 1299.
 Higer. 699.

The imperial
 army inva-
 ding Rintim-
 pore,

is defeated.

Elich Chan wrote to Delhi the particulars of this defeat. The Sul-
 tan flew into a violent rage, and immediately took the field. Upon his
 march he halted for a day at a place called Jilput, and went out a hunt-
 ing. Having wandered far from his camp, in the chace, he remained
 with his attendants all night in the forest. In the morning before
 sun-rise, he placed himself upon a rising ground, where he sat down
 with two or three attendants, and commanded the rest to hunt in his
 view. Akit Chan observing this, recollected that it was now in his
 power to cut off the King, in the same manner as the King himself
 had cut off his predecessor. He thought, that being nephew and
 brother in law to the emperor, he might claim by that, and the influ-
 ence he had by being Vakeel Muttaluck, the same title which Alla
 himself had to the empire ‡.

The Sultan
 takes the
 field.

Akit Chan imparted his resolution to a few chosen horsemen, who
 accompanied him on this party. They immediately rode up to the

A conspiracy.

‡ Alla-ul dien was himself the nephew and son in law to Firose Shaw, whom he
 murdered.

M m 2

King,



A. D. 1299.
Higcr. 699.

King, saluted him with a flight of arrows, two of which entered his body, so that he lay for dead on the ground. Akit Chan, upon this, drew his sword, and ran to cut off his head; when he was told by one of the King's attendants, that he was quite dead; that therefore to cut off his head would be an unnecessary piece of cruelty.

Akit Chan
mounts the
throne.

Akit being thus prevailed upon to desist from his intentions, set out for the camp with all expedition, mounted the throne, and proclaimed the Sultan's death. The army was thrown into great confusion; but where loyal affection and patriotism are things unknown, mankind are satisfied to bow their necks to any new master. The great men assembled to pay their court, and present their nizirs or presents upon the occasion; the customary service was read from the Coran; the Chutba was proclaimed aloud, and the singers ordered to extol his praise. Akit Chan then rose from the throne, and proceeded towards the Haram; but Malleck Dinar, the chief eunuch, with his guard, stopped him at the door, swearing, that till he shewed him the Sultan's head, or put him to death, he should not enter.

The Sultan is
advised to re-
turn to his
army,

Sultan Alla ul dien, in the mean time, recovered his senses, and, having his wounds bound up, imagined that Akit Chan's treason and treachery was a preconcerted conspiracy of the Omrahs. He signified his intentions to fly to his brother Elich Chan, at Jain, with about sixty servants, who still attended him. Malleck Humid ul dien, deputy porter of the presence, advised the Sultan against this resolution. He told him, that he ought immediately to go to his own camp, and there shew himself to his army; for that the usurper had not yet time to establish himself; and that, upon seeing the Emperor's umbrella, he doubted not but the whole army would immediately return to their duty. He observed, at the same time, that the least delay might render his affairs irrecoverable.

The



The Sultan saw the propriety of this resolute advice; and mounting his horse, with great difficulty, spread the white umbrella, which lay on the field, over his head, and with his small retinue, proceeded towards the army. When he appeared in fight, being joined by some foraging parties on the way, he was now guarded by about five hundred men. He ascended an eminence, in full view of the camp, where he was at once seen by the whole army. They crowded in thousands towards him; and the court of the usurper was immediately broke up, and in a few minutes he found himself alone. In this situation he mounted his horse, and distracted with fear, fled towards Binour.

A. D. 1299.
Higer. 699.

who desert
the usurper.

Sultan Alla ul dien now marched down from the eminence towards the royal pavillion, and mounting the throne, gave public audience; sending, at the same time, a party of horse after the usurper. They soon came up with him and brought back his head. The Sultan ordered the usurper's brother Cuttulich Chan, and the chief conspirators to be put to death.

He is taken
and slain.

When Alla recovered of his wounds, he continued his march to Rintimpore, where he was joined by Elich Chan, and began to besiege the place. But the Hindoos so well defended themselves, that numbers of the imperial army daily fell. The Sultan however continued his attacks with redoubled obstinacy, while detachments of his army ravaged the adjacent territories of Malava and Daar. But the siege being protracted for some months without much effect, Amir Omar and Mungu Chan, who were both nephews to the Emperor, and held the governments of Budaoon and Oud, rebelled and raised a great army. The Sultan wrote letters to the several Omrahs of those provinces whom he thought loyal, as also to the neighbouring Subas and Zemindars, and they levied forces, engaged, defeated and took the rebels, and sent them both prisoners to the royal

Alla besieges
Rintimpore.

A rebellion
quashed.



A. D. 1209.
Higer. 699.

royal camp. The Sultan ordered their eyes to be put out, and then to torture them to death, as a barbarous example to others.

An extraor-
dinary con-
spiracy.

Notwithstanding this severity, one of the most extraordinary conspiracies recorded in history, was undertaken by Hadjee Mola, the son of a slave of the old Cutwal Amir ul Omrah Fuchir ul dien. This ambitious youth, seeing the Sultan busied in the siege of Rintimpore, began to form the scheme of a revolution in the empire. He was perhaps moved to this scheme by the murmuring of the citizens against Alla ul Muluck's deputy, Tirmazi, who, in his master's absence in camp, oppressed the people, having the government entirely in his hands. The first thing however that Hadjee Mola publicly did, was in the heat of the day, when every body was gone to rest, to collect a mob of citizens, by a forged order from the King. With these he hastened to the house of Tirmazi, and sent in to tell him that a messenger had arrived with an order from the King. Tirmazi, out of respect to the Sultan's order, hastened to the door, when the young impostor showing him the paper in one hand, cut him down with the other. He then read aloud the forged mandate for that purpose.

A sedition at
Delhi,

The mob now encreasing, he sent parties to secure the city gates, and dispatched a person to Alla ul dien Eaz, who was Cutwal of the new city, to come and see the King's order. This magistrate however, having heard of the disturbance, paid no regard to the message, but shut his own gates. Hadjee Mola, in the mean time, with his mob, entered the red palace and released all the state prisoners, taking out all the arms, treasure and valuable effects, which he divided among his followers. He then, by force, placed Allavi, one of the prisoners, who was descended from Altumsh, upon the throne, and imperiously commanded all the principal men of the city to pay him allegiance.



The Sultan having advice of these strange transactions, was struck A. D. 1299.
Higer. 699. motionless with astonishment, but stirred not a step from the siege. He however wrote to Malleck Himid ul dien, his foster brother, who raising a party in the city, seized the Budaoon gate the seventh day after the usurpation, and took the field, where he was joined by a great multitude from the new city and the country around. With these he again, by surprize, entered the city at the Ghizni gate, but he was met at the second gate, called Beder, by Hadjie Mola and his associates, and a sharp conflict ensued. Himmid ul dien being dismounted, run up to Hadjie Mola, who was leading on his party with great bravery, and pulling him from his horse, threw him down in the street and slew him. He himself, in the mean time, received several wounds; but the faction of Hadjie Mola, quashed. spirited by his death, gave ground and dispersed themselves all over the city. Himid ul dien then proceeded to the red palace, dragged from thence the unfortunate Allavi, and sent his head round the city upon the point of a spear, which put an end to this strange conspiracy.

Elich Chan was in the mean time sent by the Sultan to Delhi, to Elich Chan
sent to punish
the rebels. punish all who were supposed to have had any hand in this rebellion. The sons of Malleck ul Omrah Fuchir ul dien, and the old Cutwal himself were put to death merely on suspicion, as the rebel had been one of their dependants. But the most probable cause was their great wealth, which was confiscated to the King.

Rintimpore had now been closely besieged for a whole year, and the Sultan, after trying all other means, fell upon the following expedient Rintimpore
taken. to take the place. He collected together a great multitude of people, and provided each of them with a bag, which they filled with earth, and having begun at some distance from the rock, with immense labour, formed an ascent to the top of the walls, by which
the



A. D. 1300.
Figer. 700.

the troops entered the place, and put Raja Amir Deo, his family and the garrison to the sword. This fort is esteemed the strongest in Hindostan.

Mier Mahummud Shaw, the Mogul general, who had taken refuge in Rintimpore, after the mutiny at Jalore, having lost most of his men in the defence of the fort, was himself lying ill of his wounds when the Sultan entered the place. Alla finding the unfortunate Mahummud in this condition, asked him in an insulting manner, "what gratitude would he express for his lord, should he command his wounds to be immediately cured." The Mogul fiercely replied, "I would put him to death for a tyrant, and endeavour to make the son of Amir Deo, to whom my gratitude is due, King."

Mahummud
Shaw put to a
cruel death.

The Sultan enraged at this reply, threw him beneath the feet of an elephant. But considering afterwards that he was a brave man, and one of whose gallant behaviour he himself had been often witness, he ordered his body to be put in a coffin, and interred with decent solemnity. The Sultan then commanded that the Raja's vizier, who had deserted over to him with a strong party during the siege, should, with all his followers, be massacred. Saying upon the occasion, that "those who have betrayed their natural Lord, can never be true to another!" Having bestowed the government of Rintimpore, with all the riches taken in it, upon his brother Elich Chan, he returned with his army to Delhi. But Elich Chan, about six months after, fell sick and died on his way to the capital.

The Sultan
convenes a
council of the
Omrahs.

Alla ul dien being in the course of this year, apprehensive of conspiracies and insurrections, called together the Omrahs who were most renowned for their wisdom, and commanded them to give their opinion without reserve, how he should conduct matters, so as to prevent disturbances and rebellions in the empire. He at the same time desired them to explain what they thought were the principal causes



causes of those disorders. The Omrahs, after consulting among themselves, replied, that there were many causes concurring in a state, from which the convulsions disagreeable in their consequences proceeded. That as those misfortunes could not be obviated at once, they would only mention, for that time, a few of those evils, from which danger to the empire must have arose.

"At the head of this list," said the Omrahs, "we must place the King's inattention to advance the good, or to redress the wrongs of the people. The public use of wine is the source of many disorders; for when men form themselves into societies for the purpose of drinking, their minds are disclosed to one another, while the strength of the liquor fermenting in their blood precipitates them into the most desperate undertakings. The connections formed by the great men of the court, are pregnant with danger to the state. Their numerous marriages, and the places in their gift, draw the strength of the government into the hands of a few, who are always able, by associating themselves together, to create revolutions in the empire. The fourth and not the least cause of disturbance is, the unequal division of property; for the wealth of a rich empire is circulated in a few hands, and therefore the governors of provinces are rather independent princes, than subjects of the state."

The Sultan approved so much of the remarks of his Omrahs, that he immediately began to carry into execution the plan which they laid before him. He first applied himself to a strict inquiry into the administration of justice; to redress grievances, and to examine narrowly into the private as well as public characters of all men of rank in the empire. He laid himself out to procure intelligence of the most secret discourses of families of note in the city, as well as of every transaction of moment in the most distant provinces. He executed justice with such rigour and severity, that robbery and theft, formerly

A. D. 1500.
Higer. 700.

The causes of
disturbances
in the em-
pire.

The Sultan
begins to re-
dress grie-
vances.



A. D. 1300.
Higer. 700.

so common, were not heard of in the land. The traveller slept secure upon the public highway, and the merchant carried his commodities in safety from the sea of Bengal to the mountains of Cabul, and from Tilling to Cashmire.

Forbids the
use of wine.

He published an edict against the use of wine and strong liquors upon pain of death. He himself set the example to his subjects, and emptied his cellars in the street. In this he was followed by all ranks of people, so that, for some days, the common sewers flowed with wine.

Prohibits
marriages
without li-
cence.

He issued out orders that no marriage among the nobility should be ratified without a special licence from him: that no private meetings or conversation should be held among the Omrahs, which proved a severe check to the pleasures of society. This latter order was carried into such rigorous execution, that no man durst entertain his friends without a written permission from the vizier.

Seizes upon
the effects of
the wealthy.

He then lengthened the hand of violence upon the rich. He seized upon the wealth, and confiscated the estates of Mussulmen and Hindoos without distinction, and by this means he accumulated an immense treasure. Men, in short, were almost reduced to a level over all the empire.

Cuts off fees
from the of-
fices.

All emoluments were cut off from the different offices, which were filled with men whose indigence and dependence rendered them implicitly obedient to the dictates of government.

An equal land
tax establish-
ed.

He ordered a tax of half the real annual produce of the lands to be raised over all the empire, and to be regularly transmitted to the exchequer. He appointed officers to superintend the collectors, who were to take care that the Zemindars should take no more from the

poor



poor farmers, than in proportion to the estimate which they had given in of their estates; and in case of disobedience or neglect, the superintendants were obliged to refund the overplus, and to pay a fine for the oppression. The farmers, at the same time, were confined to a certain proportion of land, and to an appointed number of servants and oxen to cultivate the same. No grazier was permitted to have above a certain number of cows, sheep and goats, and a tax was paid out of them to the government.

A. D. 1300.
Higer. 700.

So strictly did the Sultan look after the behaviour of the collectors and other officers of the revenue, that many of them, who formerly kept great retinues, were obliged to dismiss them, and to have all the menial offices of their families performed by their wives and children. Neither were they permitted to resign their employs, till they found others as capable as themselves to execute the duties of their office.

Severity to
the officers of
the revenue.

These regulations were good, but they were arbitrary and severe. He broke through all laws and customs, which, according to the Mahommedan law, were left to the decision of the casis. Other Monarchs left state affairs to the common course of justice. Alla descended to all the inferiour departments of government. It was with him a common saying, "That religion had no connection with civil government, but was only the business, or rather amusement of private life; and that the will of a wise prince was better than the variable opinions of bodies of men."

These regulations good,
but too severe.

As the Sultan was known to be illiterate, it became a maxim with the learned men at court, to talk upon no subjects which they knew must be beyond the King's knowledge. He was however so sensible of the disadvantages which he laboured under by his ignorance of letters, that he applied himself privately to study, and soon, notwithstanding

The Sultan
applies himself
to letters.



A. D. 1303.
Higer. 703.

standing the difficulty of acquiring the knowledge of the Persian manner of writing, which generally requires ten or twelve years study, he soon read all addressess, and made himself acquainted with the best authors in the language. After he had proceeded so far as to be able to hold part in learned discourses, he encouraged literary subjects, and showed particular favour to all the eminent men of that age, particularly to Cafi Zea ul dien Molana Zehirling, to Molana Murshid Corami and Cuzi Moiz ul dien Biana. He appointed the last of those learned men to explain the law to him; which he did according to the true spirit, in every point upon which he was consulted. He did not however do it without fear and trembling, where it differed from the King's violent maxims of government.

The Sultan
reduces Chi-
tor.

The Sultan, much about this time, sent an army, by the way of Bengal, to reduce the fort of Arinkil, which was in the possession of the Raja of Tilling. He himself moved the royal standard towards Chitor, which had never before been reduced by the troops of Islam. After a siege of six months he took the place, in the year 703, conferred the government of it upon his eldest son Chizer Chan, and called it Chizerabad. He at the same time bestowed upon Chizer regal dignities and authority.

The Moguls
invade Hin-
dostan.

Intelligence of this expedition arriving at Maver ul nere, Jirghi, who distinguished himself formerly against Ziffer Chan, thinking that the Sultan would be a long time absent, seized that opportunity for invading Hindostan. Alla hearing of this dangerous inroad, abandoned all his schemes against the Decan, and made what haste he could with his army to Delhi.

They ad-
vance to-
wards Delhi.

Jirghi, with twelve tomons of Mogul horse, approached, in a few days, the city, and encamped upon the banks of the Jumna. The horse of the imperial army being absent on the expedition to Arinkil,



Arinkil, the Sultan was in no condition to face, upon equal terms, <sup>A. D. 1303.
Higer. 703.</sup> so powerful and warlike an enemy in the field. He therefore contented himself with entrenching his army in the plain beyond the suburbs, till he could draw the forces of the distant Subas together. But the Moguls having the command of the adjacent country, prevented the succours from joining the Sultan, and proceeded so far as to plunder the suburbs, in the King's presence, without his being able to prevent them.

In this situation stood affairs for two months; and then the Sultan, say some authors, had recourse to supernatural aid. He applied to a faint of those days, whose name was Shech Nizam ul dien Aulia. The faint, in one night, without any visible cause, struck ^{but retreats} the Mogul army with a panic which occasioned their precipitate retreat to their own country. But we have no reason to ascribe the flight of the Moguls to so weak and superstitious a cause; as private order, intelligence, or the improbability of success, brought about their sudden departure more than the power of the faint. The Sultan, during this alarming period, was heard to confess, that his ideas of universal conquest were idle and ridiculous, for that there were many heads in the world as hard as his own.

Alla being relieved from the perils of this invasion, built a palace upon the spot where he had entrenched himself, and ordered the citadel of Delhi to be pulled down and built anew. He then <sup>Alla levies a
great army.</sup> began to recruit his army, with an intention to retaliate upon the Moguls their repeated inroads. He increased his forces to such a prodigious number, that upon calculating the expence, he found his revenues, and what treasures he had himself, could not support them above six years. He resolved therefore to reduce the pay, but it occurred to him that this could not be done with propriety, without lowering proportionably, the price of horses, arms and provisions.



A. D. 1303.
Higer. 703.

visions. This he did by an edict which he strictly enforced all over the empire, settling the price of every article at about half the common rate, which in fact, was just doubling his treasure and revenues.

The prices of
grain regu-
lated ;

To establish this reduction of the price, with respect to grain, he ordered great magazines to be built upon the rivers Jumna and Ganges, and other places convenient for water carriage, under the direction of Malleck Cabuli. This collector received half of the land tax in grain ; and the royal agents supplied the markets at a stated price. To prevent any monopoly in this article, every farmer was allowed to retain only a certain quantity, according to the number of his family, and send the overplus, as soon as it was threshed out, to market, for which he was obliged to take the standing price. The importation of grain was encouraged ; but to export it or any other article of provisions, was a capital crime. The King himself had a daily report laid before him, of the quantity sold and remaining in the several royal granaries, and spies were appointed in the different markets, to inform him of abuses, which he punished with the utmost rigour.

and of cloth.

The Sultan also appointed a public office, and inspectors, who fixed the price of the various kinds of cloth, according to its quality, obliging the merchants to open their shops at certain hours every day, and sell their goods at the stipulated price. He at the same time opened a loan, by which they were enabled to procure ready money to import cloth from the neighbouring countries, where the poverty of the people rendered their manufactures cheaper. But what is somewhat unaccountable, the exportation of the finer kind of manufacture was prohibited, yet not permitted to be worn at home, except by special authority from the King, which favour was only conferred upon men of rank.

As



As horses had arose to an immense price, by an association of the dealers, who only bought up a certain number from the Persian and northern merchants to enhance the price; the King published an edict, by which they were obliged to register the prices paid for them, and to sell them at a certain profit within such a time, if that price was offered them, otherwise the King took them upon his own account. The price of the horse was at the same time according to his quality, and care was taken, by that means, that the merchants and dealers in those animals should not have an opportunity, by secret connivance, to raise the price. Many frauds being found out in this article some time after, a great number of horse dealers were whipt out of the city, and others put to death. Oxen, sheep, goats, camels, and asses, were also taken into consideration; and in short every useful animal, and all commodities, were sold at a stated price in the Bazars.

A. D. 1303.

Higer. 703.

Of horses.

The Sultan having thus regulated the prices of things, his next care was to new model his army. He settled the pay of every horseman, for himself and horse, from 234 rupees a year, down to 80, according to the goodness of the horse; and, upon a muster, he found his cavalry to consist of four hundred and seventy-five thousand.

Settles the
pay of the
army.

In the mean time Ali Beg, the grandson of Chingez Chan, and Jirpal Chaja, with forty thousand horse, made an irruption into Hindostan, but the Sultan sending Malleck Tughlick, with a force against them, they were defeated, with the loss of seven thousand. Ali Beg, and Jirpal, with nine thousand of their troops, were taken prisoners. They were sent in chains to the Sultan, who ordered the chiefs to be thrown under the feet of an elephant, and the soldiers to be inhumanly massacred. He appointed Tughlick, for this service, viceroy of Punjab.

The Moguls
invading
Hindostan
are over-
thrown.

Alip Chan was about this time appointed Amir ul Omrah of Guzerat, and sent thither with a great force. Ain ul Muluck Moulani,

an



A. D. 1304.
Higer. 704.
Malava re-
duced.

an Omrah of great fame, was at the same time ordered with a numerous army to the conquest of Malava. He was opposed by Kokah, the Raja, with forty thousand Rajaput horse, and one hundred thousand foot. An engagement ensued, in which Ain ul Muluck proved victorious, and took the cities of Ugein, Mandu, Daranagurri, and Chanduri. He, after these successes, dispatched a Fatte Namma* to the emperor, who, upon receiving it, ordered a rejoicing of seven days throughout the city of Delhi. Kuntir Deo, the governor of the fort of Jallore, terrified by the conquests of Ain ul Muluck, gave up that place upon terms of capitulation.

The Raja of
Chitor makes
his escape,

The Raja of Chitor, who had been prisoner since the Emperor took that place, found in the mean time means to make his escape, in a very extraordinary manner. The Sultan having heard extravagant things in praise of the beauty and accomplishments of one of the Raja's daughters, told him, that if he would send her, he should, upon her account, be released.

by the con-
trivance of
his daughter.

The Raja, who was very ill treated in his confinement, consented, and sent for his daughter with a manifest design to prostitute her to the King. The Raja's family hearing this dishonourable proposal, concerted means of poisoning the Raja to save their own reputation. But the daughter being a girl of invention, proposed a stratagem to release her father, and at the same time to save her own honour. She accordingly wrote to her father to give out, that she was coming with all her attendants, and would be at Delhi upon a certain day, acquainting him with the part she intended to act. Her contrivance was this: She selected a number of enterprising fellows, who in compleat armour, concealed themselves in doolies or close chairs, in which the women are always carried; she provided for them a chosen retinue of horse and foot, as is customary to guard ladies of

* A writing of victory. Pompous accounts of his actions, according to their custom.
rank.



rank. She herself, by this time, had, by her father's means, received the Sultan's passport, and the whole cavalcade proceeded to Delhi, and were admitted without interruption. It was now night, and by the Sultan's permission, they were permitted to see the Raja. The chairs being carried into the prison, and the attendants having taken their stations without; the armed men started out of the chairs, and putting all to the sword within the courts, carried the Raja out, and having horses prepared for him, he mounted, and with his attendants, rushed out of the city, before any opposition could be made, and fled to his own country.

In the year 705, Kabeik, an Omrah of Dova Chan, King of Maver ul nere, with design to revenge the death of Ali Beg and Jirpal, invaded Hindostan with a great army, and ravaging Moulton, proceeded to Sewalic. Malleck Tughlick, in the mean time, collecting his forces, cut off the retreat of the Moguls, before any troops arrived from Delhi, and defeated them with great slaughter. Those who escaped the sword, finding it impossible to force their way home, retired into the desert, where thirst and the hot winds which blow at that season, put an end to their miserable lives; so that out of fifty seven thousand horse, besides their attendants, who were still more numerous, only three thousand, who were taken prisoners, survived this horrid scene. The unhappy captives were only reserved for greater misery. They were sent to Delhi with their unfortunate chief, Kabeik, where they were all trodden to death by elephants, except some women and children, who were sold in the market for slaves.

These repeated misfortunes did not however discourage the Moguls. Ackbalmund, a chief of great reputation, soon after invaded Hindostan with a powerful army. But Malleck Tughlick defeated him also, with great slaughter; and sent some thousand prisoners to

A. D. 1105.
Higer. 705.

The Moguls
overthrown.

The Moguls
again over-
thrown.



A. D. 1305.
Higer. 705.

Delhi, who were dispatched by the customary inhumanity of Alla. Fear, from this time forward, took possession of the Moguls, and they gave over all thoughts of Hindostan for many years. They were even hard pressed to defend themselves: for Malleck Tughlick made incursions into their country every year, plundering the provinces of Cabul, Ghizni, Candahar, and Garrimfere, or laying them under heavy contributions.

The Sultan
busy in settling the police of the empire.

In the mean time, the Sultan was employed in settling the internal policy and government of his empire; and with such fortunate perseverance in whatever he undertook, that the superstition of the times ascribed his success to supernatural power, amazed at the good effects that flowed from the strictness of his government.

Ram Deo, Raja of Deogire in the Decan, having neglected to send the revenues of that district, which he assigned over to the Sultan by treaty, Malleck Cafoor, with many Omrahs of renown, and a great army was ordered to conquer the Decan. This Cafoor was one of the Sultan's catamites, and originally a slave, taken by force from a merchant of Guzerat, as we have already mentioned. The Emperor's affection for Cafoor exceeded all the bounds of decency and prudence upon the present occasion. He gave him the title of Malleck Naib Cafoor *, commanding the Omrahs who attended him, to pay their respects to him every day, as to a sovereign. This created among them great disgust, but they durst not murmur. Chaja Hadjee was appointed his lieutenant; a man much esteemed in those days, for his good principles. In the beginning of the year 706, they marched from Delhi, with an army of one hundred thousand horse, and were joined in their way, by Ain ul Muluck Moulteni, Suba of Malava, and Alip Chan, Suba of Guzerat, with their forces.

The imperial
army invades
the Decan.

* That is, a viceroy; with all the ensigns of royalty.



One of the Sultan's wives, the fair Comladè, formerly mentioned, hearing of this expedition, addressed herself to the King, and told him, that before she was taken prisoner, she had two beautiful daughters to Raja Kirren. That one of them, she heard, had since died; but that the other, whose name was Dewildè, was still alive. She therefore begged that the Sultan should give orders to his generals to endeavour to get her into their possession, and send her to Delhi. The King consented, and gave orders accordingly.

A. D. 1306.
Higer, 706.
Comladè's address to the Sultan.

Malleck Cafoor, having passed through Malava, encamped upon the borders of the Decan. He sent the Sultan's order to Raja Kirren, to deliver up his daughter Dewildè, which was now urged as a pretext for commencing hostilities in case of a refusal. The Raja could by no means be brought to agree to this demand. Malleck Cafoor therefore marched from his camp at Nidderbar, while Alip Chan, with his forces from Guzerat, was taking the rout of the mountains of Buckelana, to enter the Decan by another pass. He was opposed by Raja Kirren, who defeated all his attempts for two months, in which time several undecisive actions were fought.

Cafoor enters the Decan.

Singeldeo, the son of Ram Deo, Raja of Deogire, who had been contracted to the young Dewildè, without consent of his father, sent his brother Bimedeo with presents to Raja Kirren, perswading him, that as Dewildè was the occasion of the war, if he should deliver her over to him, the troops of Islam, in despair of obtaining their ends, would return to their own country. Raja Kirren, who depended much upon the young prince's aid, consented to this proposal, and gave his daughter, then in her thirteenth year, in marriage to Singeldeo.

Singeldeo demands Dewildè in marriage.

Alip Chan hearing this news, was greatly terrified lest the Sultan should impute this circumstance to his slowness, and was resolved, at



A. D. 1506.
Higer. 706.
Alip Chan
designs to in-
tercept her,

all events, to seize her before her departure, as he was certain his own life depended upon his success. He acquainted all the Omrahs with his intentions, who readily seconded the attempt. He then entered the mountains with his army, and engaging the Raja, gave him a total defeat; upon which, Kirren fled to Deogire, leaving all his elephants, tents and equipage upon the field. Alip Chan pursued him through the hills for some days, but at length, entirely lost his track and all intelligence concerning him and his daughter. But in the end, accident threw this pearl in his way.

Halting to refresh his army two days among the mountains, some of his troops, without leave, to the number of three hundred, went from the camp to see a famous mountain in the neighbourhood of Deogire, from which city he was not then far distant. In their excursion they saw a great troop of horse, whom they apprehended to belong to Ramdeo, and to be in pursuit of them. As there was no safety in flight, they were determined to stand on their defence, and accordingly drew up to receive the enemy. This troop proved to be the retinue of Bimedeo, who was carrying the young bride to his brother. The two parties, in short, engaged, and the Hindoos were put to flight, while an unfortunate arrow having pierced the horse of Dewildè, the unhappy fair one was abandoned in the field. The conquerors seeing her, gathered round her horse, and commenced a bloody scuffle about the prize. This might have proved fatal to the beautiful Dewildè, had not one of her female slaves told aloud her name and quality, conjuring them to carry her to their commander with that respect which was due to her rank and sex. Upon hearing this they knew the peril of treating her with any indignity; and while an express was dispatched with the news to Alip Chan, they conducted her with great care and respect to the camp.

seizes her by
an accident.

Alip



Alip Chan, having obtained this prize, was exceedingly rejoiced, knowing how acceptable it would be to his prince, over whom the lady's mother had great influence. He therefore prosecuted his conquests no further, but returned to Guzerat, and from thence carried Dewildè to Delhi, and presented her to her mother. In a few days her beauty inflamed the heart of the Sultan's eldest son Chizer Chan, to whom she was given in marriage. The history of the loves of this illustrious pair, is wrote in an elegant poem, by Amir Chusero.

A. D. 1306.
Higer. 706.
He conducts
her to Delhi.

Let us now return to Malleck Naib Cafoor, whom we left entering the Decan. He first subdued the country of the Mahrattors, which he divided among his Omrahs, then proceeded to the siege of Deogire, since known by the name of Dowlat-abad. Ramdeo being in no condition to oppose this great army, prudently left his son Singeldeo in the fort, and advanced himself, with great presents, to the conqueror, to procure peace, which was accordingly settled between them. Malleck Cafoor, upon this, wrote a Fatee Namma to the King, and some time after brought Ramdeo, with rich presents and seventeen elephants, to pay his allegiance to him at Delhi, where he himself was received with the most extravagant marks of favour and distinction. Ramdeo had royal dignities conferred upon him, with the title of Rai Raian *, and had not only the government of his own dominions restored to him, but others were also added, for all which he did homage, and paid tribute to the Sultan. The King moreover gave him the district of Nofari, near Guzerat, by way of Jagier, and a lack of rupees to bear his expences home. Thus he dismissed Ramdeo with princely generosity; having, in some measure, looked upon the wealth, of which he had formerly robbed him, as the foundation of all his own greatness. And he perhaps

Cafoor's
transactions in
the Decan.

* Prince of Princes.

thought



A. D. 1305. thought that some grateful return was due to the Raja upon this
 Higer. 705. account.

The Sultan
 besieges and
 takes Sewana.

During the absence of Cafoor on his expedition to the Decan, the King employed himself in taking a strong fort to the southward of Delhi, called Sewana, which had often been attempted in vain. When Jilledeo the Raja of this place found he could hold out no longer, he sent his own image, which had been cast in pure gold, to the Sultan, with a chain round its neck, in token of obedience. This present was accompanied by a hundred elephants, and other precious effects, in hopes of procuring peace. The Sultan received the presents, but returned him for answer, that unless he came and made his submission in person, he could hope little from his dumb representative. The Raja finding the Sultan inexorable, threw himself upon his mercy, and delivered up the place. The Sultan plundered and again restored it. But he alienated a great part of the Raja's country to his favourite Omrahs, and bound him over to pay homage for the rest. The Sultan then proceeded to Jallire, which he took, and returned to Delhi.

Cafoor
 marches to-
 wards Arin-
 kil.

The Sultan, much about this time, was informed that the expedition, by the way of Bengal, to Arinkil in the country of Tilling, had not succeeded, and that his army on that side had been obliged to retreat in great distress. In the year 709, he dispatched Malleck Cafoor with a great force to invade that country, by the way of Deogire; with orders, that if Lidder Deo, Prince of Arinkil, should consent to give him a handsome present, and promise an annual tribute, to return without prosecuting the war any further. When Malleck Cafoor and Chaja Hadjee had reached Deogire, Ram Deo came out to meet them with offerings, and carrying them home, entertained them with great hospitality, ordering his Bazar to the camp, with strict orders to sell every thing according to the Sultan's established price in his own dominions.

Cafoor



Cafoor having marched from Deogire, appeared at Indore, upon the frontiers of Tilling, and issued orders to lay waste the country with fire and sword; which struck the unhappy people, who had never injured their wanton enemies, with great terror and consternation. In the mean time, the neighbouring Rajas hastened with all their forces to support Liddledeo, in this alarming juncture. But as the imperial army proceeded with great expedition, he was forced, before the arrival of his allies, to shut himself up in the fort of Arinkil, which was a place of great strength. The allied Rajas, upon this, also took possession of divers strong holds round the country.

A.D. 1307.
Higer. 707.
Enters Tilling.

Malleck Cafoor immediately invested the place, and began his attacks, which were carried on and repelled with great slaughter on both sides. Notwithstanding the interruptions that Cafoor received from the Rajas without the place, Arinkil, after some months siege, was taken by assault, and the garrison massacred without mercy, for the citadel to which Liddledeo had retired, was not sufficient to contain the whole. Liddledeo, driven to this extremity, bought his peace with three hundred elephants, seven thousand horses, and money and jewels to a very great amount; agreeing at the same time, to pay an annual tribute. Malleck Cafoor, after this advantageous peace, returned with his army to Delhi. He dispatched before him the news of his victories, which was read from the pulpit, and a public rejoicing ordered. Upon his approach to the city, the King himself came out and met him at the Budaoon gate, and there the conqueror laid all the spoils at his feet.

Besieges and takes Arinkil.

In the year 710, The Sultan sent Malleck Cafoor and Chaja Hajee with a great army, to reduce Dhoor, Summund and Maber in the Decan, where he had heard, there were temples very rich in gold and jewels. When they had proceeded to Deogire, they found that

Cafoor's expedition to the Decan.



A. D. 1310.
Higer, 710.

The Raja of
the Carnatic
overthrown.

Ram Deo the old Raja was dead, and that the young Raja, Singeldeo, was not so well affected to them as they thought. They therefore left some Omrahs in a strong post upon the banks of the Ganges, and continued their march. When they had passed the Raja's territories, they began their inhuman cruelties, and after three months march from Delhi, arrived in the countries which they were commanded to subdue. They engaged Bellal Deo, Raja of the Carnatic, and defeating him, took him prisoner, and then ravaged his whole country. They found in the temples, prodigious spoils in idols of gold, adorned with the most precious stones; and other rich effects, consecrated to their worship. Here the conqueror built a small mosque, and ordered divine service to be read according to the Mahomedan faith, and the Chutba to be pronounced in the Emperor's name. This mosque remains intire in our days, for the Caffers * esteeming it a house consecrated to God, would not destroy it †.

An immense
treasure discovered.

Malleck Naib Cafoor having wearied his own inhumanity and avarice, in destroying and robbing an unfortunate people, resolved to return to Delhi with his spoils. The night before his intended march, a quarrel arose among some Brahmins who had taken protection in his camp from the plundering parties that scoured the country. Some body who understood their language, found the quarrel was about the division of some hidden treasure, which was immediately communicated to the Cutwal, who seized them and carried them to Malleck Cafoor to be examined. They were at

* The Mahomedans give the name of Caffers or Infidels to all the nations who do not profess their own faith.

† This observation of our author sets the two religions in very opposite lights, and is perfectly consistent with the principle of the universal charity of the Hindoos, who think that the same God is the object of all religions, however much they may differ in ceremonies and tenets.

first



first very obstinate, but their lives being threatened, and each being questioned apart, they were afraid one would inform against the other, by which means they discovered all they knew. Seven different places were pointed out near the camp, where immense treasures were concealed. These being dug up and placed upon elephants, Malleck Cafoor turned the points of his spears to Delhi, where he arrived without any remarkable occurrence, in the year 711. He presented the Sultan with 312 elephants, 20,000 horses, 96,000 maunds of gold, several chests of jewels and pearls, and other precious things *. The Sultan upon seeing this treasure, which exceeded that of Baadawird or Pirvez, was greatly rejoiced, and opened the doors of his bounty to all. He gave to each of the principal Omrahs ten maunds, and to the inferior five. The learned men of his court received one maund, and thus in proportion, he distributed wealth to all his servants, according to their rank and quality. The remainder was melted down, coined and lodged in the treasury. It is said, that during this expedition to the Carnatic, the soldiers threw the silver they found away, as too cumbersome, where gold was found in such plenty. No person wore bracelets, chains, or rings of any other metal than gold, while all the plate in the houses of the great, and in the temples, was of beaten gold; neither was silver money at all current in that country, should we believe the reports of those adventurers.

A. D. 1311.
Higer. 711.

The generosity of the Sultan.

Soon after this accession of wealth, the tyrannical Alla exhibited a scene in the capital too dreadful to be varnished over by his great

* This treasure may appear to exceed all belief in the eyes of Europeans: But if we consider the Hindoos as a mercantile people, and not disturbed perhaps by wars for thousands of years; and add to this, that it is the invariable custom of that race, to live with the abstinence of hermits in the midst of wealth, our wonder will cease, and the credit of our author remain intire. The gold alone amounts to about one hundred millions of our money.

VOL. I.

P p

abilities.



A. D. 1311.
Higer. 711.

His inhumanity to the Mogul mercenaries.

abilities. The Mogul converts in his army having incurred his displeasure, he ordered them to be all discharged. Some of them engaged themselves in the service of the Omrahs, but the greater number remained at Delhi in great distress, in hopes that the Sultan would relent by seeing their wretched poverty. He however remained obdurate, and some daring fellows among them, forced by their misfortunes, entered into a conspiracy to murder the King. This plot being discovered, the Sultan, instead of punishing the conspirators, extended his inhuman rigour to the whole body. He ordered them all to be instantly put to the sword; so that fifteen thousand of those unhappy wretches lay dead in the streets of Delhi in one day. All their wives and children were enslaved. The Sultan was so inexorable and vindictive, that no one durst attempt to conceal, however nearly connected they might be, any of the unfortunate Moguls, so that not one of them escaped.

His pride and magnificence.

The King, elevated by his good fortune, gave himself over to pride. He listened to no advice, as he sometimes condescended to do in the beginning of his reign, but every thing was executed by his irrevocable word. Yet the empire never flourished so much as in this reign. Order and justice travelled to the most distant provinces, and magnificence raised her head in the land. Palaces, mosques, universities, baths, spires, forts, and all manner of public and private buildings seemed to rise, as by the power of enchantment, neither did there in any age appear such a concourse of learned men from all parts. Forty five skilled in the sciences were professors in the universities. In poetry, Amir Chusero and Chaja Hassen Delavi held the first rank. In philosophy and phyc, Molana Buddir ul dien Damiski. In divinity, Molana Shatabi. In astrology, Shech Nizam ul dien Awlia acquired much fame. Others distinguished themselves in music, morality, languages, and in all the fine arts then known in the world.

But



But when the Sultan seemed to have carried every thing to the height of perfection, and to the extent of his wishes, he all at once adopted every measure that evidently tended to subvert the great fabrick which he had raised. He resigned the reins of government intirely into the hands of Malleck Cafoor, whom he blindly supported in his most impolitic and tyrannical actions. This gave great disgust to the Omrahs, and spread universal discontent over the face of the people. He neglected the education of his own children, who were let out of the seraglio when very young, and intrusted with independant power. Chizer Chan was made viceroy of Chitor when as yet a boy, without any person of wisdom to advise him or to superintend his conduct, while Shadi Chan, Mubarick Chan and Shab ul dien Chan, his other sons, had appointments of the same important nature.

A. D. 1311.
Higer. 711.
His impolitic
proceedings.

The Raja of Tilling, about this time, sent some presents and twenty elephants to the King, with a letter, informing him that the tribute which he had agreed to pay in his treaty with Malleck Cafoor, was ready to be paid. Malleck Cafoor, upon this, desired leave of the King, to make another expedition into the Decan, promising that he would, not only collect the revenues which had fallen due, but bring the Raja of Deogire and others, who had with-held their allegiance and tribute, under due subjection. He was principally moved to this by his jealousy of Chizer Chan, the declared heir to the empire, whose government lay most convenient for that expedition; and whom he feared the Sultan intended to send.

Malleck Cafoor proposes
an expedition
to the Decan.

The Sultan consented to Cafoor's proposal, and he accordingly proceeded the fourth time to the Decan with a great army. He seized the Raja of Deogire, and inhumanly put him to death; then ravaging the countries of Mahrat, Connir, Dabul, Giwil, Raijore

He enters the
Decan and
reduces it.



A. D. 1312. and Mudkil, took up his residence at Deogire. He raised the tribute from the Rajas of Tilling and the Carnatic, and in the year 712, dispatched the whole to the Emperor.

The King falls sick.

The Sultan by this time, by his intemperance in the seraglio, ruined his constitution, and was taken extremely ill. His wife Mallecke Jehan and her son Chizer Chan, neglected him entirely, and spent their time in riot and revelry, which added new strength to the King's disorder. He therefore ordered Malleck Cafoor from the Decan, and Alip Chan from Guzerat. He told them in private of the unpolitic, undutiful and cruel behaviour of his wife and son.

Malleck Cafoor aspires to the throne.

Cafoor, who had before aspired, in his mind, to the empire, now began seriously to form schemes for the extirpation of the royal line. He, for this purpose, insinuated to the King, that Chizer Chan, Mallecke Jehan and Alip Chan had conspired against his life. What gave colour to this wicked accusation was, that at this time, Mallecke Jehan solicited the Sultan to get one of Alip Chan's daughters for her son Shadi Chan. This traitor did not fail to improve this circumstance to his own advantage. The King at length suffered suspicion to steal into his breast, and ordered Chizer Chan to Amrohe, and there to continue till he himself should recover. Though Chizer Chan was mad with the follies of youth, this command of his father made a deep impression on his mind, and at his departure he made a private vow, that if God should spare the life of his father, he would return all the way on foot. When he accordingly heard that his father's health began to return, he performed his vow, and waited upon him at Delhi.

Plots against Chizer Chan,

The traitor Cafoor turned this filial piety entirely against Chizer. He insinuated that his behaviour, by such a sudden change, could be imputed to nothing but hypocrisy, and urged his disobedience, by coming without his father's leave, pretending, at the same time, that he



he was intriguing with the Omrahs, about kindling a rebellion in the Empire. The Sultan could not give entire credit to these insinuations. He sent for Chizer Chan into his presence, embraced him to try his affection, and seeing him weep, seemed convinced of his sincerity, and ordered him into the Seraglio, to see his mother and sisters. But unhappily for this Prince, the flights of his youth made him deviate again into his former wild amusements. He neglected for several days to visit his father; during which time his subtle enemy bribed over to his own interest the Sultan's private servants, and called upon them to witness his aspersions against Chizer. He at length, by a thousand wiles and stratagems, accomplished his purpose, and prevailed upon the King to imprison his two sons Chizer Chan and Shadi Chan, in the fort of Gualier, and their mother in the old citadel. He at the same time procured an order to seize Aliph Chan, who was unjustly put to death, and his brother Nizam ul dien, Suba of Jalore, was assassinated by Seid Cummal ul dien Carrick, who assumed his place.

Thus far the traitor's schemes advanced in the direct road of success. But now the fire which had long been smothered, began to flame, kindling first at Guzerat into a general insurrection. The Sultan, to suppress this rebellion, sent Cumal ul dien Currik thither with a great army; but the forces commanded by the friends of Alip Chan defeated him with great slaughter, and put him to a cruel death. In the mean time the Suba of Chitor threw the Sultan's officers over the wall, and assumed independence; while Hirpal Deo, the son in law of Ramdeo, stirred up the Decan to arms, and took a number of the Sultan's garrisons.

Alla ul dien, upon receiving this intelligence, could do nothing but bite his own flesh, in resentment. His grief and rage served to strengthen his disorder, which would yield to no power of medicine.

On



A. D. 1316.
Higer. 716.

On the evening of the sixth of Shawal, in the year 716, he gave up that life, which, like a comet, had spread terror and desolation, through an astonished world; but not without suspicion of being poisoned by the villain whom he had raised from the dust to power. He reigned twenty years and some months.

His character.

If we look upon the government and policy of Alla ul dien, a great King arises to our view. If we behold his hands, which are red, an inexorable tyrant appears. Had he come by better means to the throne, his abilities deserved it well; but he began in cruelty, and waded through blood to the end. Ambition was the favourite passion of his soul, and from it sprung forth like branches, injustice, violence, and rapine. Had fortune placed him at first on high, his glory would not perhaps be tarnished with meanness and deceit; but in whatever way that flame was to pass through the world, his tract, like that of a storm, must have been marked with ruin. He had some right as a warrior, to the title of Secunder Sani; but these two Princes resembled one another in nothing but in success and bravery. The first was polished and generous, the latter was dark and rude. They were both magnificent, and each of them might conquer the world, and could command it. The servants of his household amounted to seventeen thousand, and his pomp, wealth and power was never equalled by any Prince who sat before him on the throne of Hindostan.

SECTION



SECTION XIV.

The Reign of SHAB UL DIEN OMAR ben Sultan ALLA UL
DIEN CHILLIGIE.

IN the history of Sidder Jehan of Guzerat, we are informed that the day after the death of Sultan Alla ul dien, Malleck Cafoor assembled the Omrahs, and produced a spurious testament of the deceased King, in which he had appointed Shab ul dien, the youngest son, his successor, and Cufoor himself regent, during his minority, setting aside the right of primogeniture in the person of Chizer Chan, and the other princes. Shab ul dien then, in the seventh year of his age, was placed on the throne, and Cafoor began his administration. The first step which the traitor took, was to send a person to Gualier, to put out the eyes of Chizer Chan and Shadi Chan. His orders were inhumanly executed; and the Sultana Malleke Jehan was put into closer confinement, and all her wealth seized. Mubarick Chan, the third son of Alla, was also taken into custody, with an intention to have his eyes put out, like his unhappy brothers.

A. D. 1316.
Higer. 716.
Shab ul dien
placed upon
the throne by
Cafoor.

Cafoor's cru-
elty to the
Princes.

There is ridicule in what we are to relate. Cafoor, though an eunuch, married the mother of Shab ul dien, the Emperor's third wife. But the mother of Mubarick Shaw, Alla ul dien's second wife, having heard that the regent intended to put out the eyes of her son, acquainted Shech Nizam ul dien of her intelligence, and he gave her some hopes that the threatened misfortune should be prevented.

Cafoor, tho'
an eunuch,
marries one
of the Sul-
tanas.

Malleck Cafoor, in the mean time, to cloak his wicked designs, placed the young King every day upon the throne, and ordered the nobles

Sends to put
out the eyes
of Mubarick.



A. D. 1316.
Higer. 716.

nobles to pay their respects, as usual, to the Emperor. He sent one night some assassins to cut off Mubarick Shaw; but when they entered the apartment of the Prince, he conjured them to remember his father, whose servants they were; then untying a string of rich jewels from his neck, which perhaps had more influence than his intreaties, he gave it them. They immediately abandoned their purpose; but quarrelling about the division of the jewels, when they had got out, it was proposed to carry them to the chief of the foot-guards, and acquaint him of what the Prince had said, and of their instructions, from Malleck Cafoor.

A conspiracy
against Ca-
foor.

The Mubishir *, who owed every thing to the favour of the deceased King, was shocked at the villainy of Cafoor, and finding his people of the same sentiments, he immediately formed a conspiracy against the tyrant, and accordingly he and his lieutenant, the Bushier, entered his apartment, in a few hours, and assassinated him, with some of the principal eunuchs, who were attached to his interest. This happened thirty-five days after the King's death, and thus the world was rid of a monster too horrid to exist among mankind.

He is assassi-
nated.

Mubarick
Chan ascends
the throne.

When, with the return of day, the transactions of the night became public, they gave general satisfaction. Mubarick Chan was released from his confinement, and had the reins of government placed in his hand. He however did not immediately assume the throne, but acted for the space of two months, as regent or vizier for his brother, till he had brought over the Omrahs to his interest. He then claimed his birthright to the diadem, deposed his brother, and acceded to the imperial dignity. But, according to the barbarous custom and policy of those days, he deprived Shab ul dien of his eyes, and confined him for life in the fort of Gualier, after he had borne the title of King for three months and some days.

* Chief or commander of the foot-guards.

SECTION



SECTION XV.

The Reign of CUTTUB UL DIEN MUBARICK SHAW CHIL-
LIGE.

UPON the seventh of Mohirrim, in the year seven hundred A.D. 1317.
Higer. 717.
and seventeen of the Higer, Mubarick Shaw mounted the throne. The Mubishir who had saved his life, and raised him to the imperial dignity, as also the Bushire, were ungratefully and inhumanly put to death by his orders, under no better pretence than that they presumed too much upon the services they had done him. It is probable he was instigated to this base action by his fears, as, in some measure, appears by his immediately dispersing all the old Peons who were under their command, into different parts of the country. Mubarick began to dispense his favours among the Omrahs, but he disgusted them all by raising some of his slaves to that dignity. Mubarick's
cruelty and
ingratitude.

Malleck Dinar Shenapil, was dignified with the title of Ziffer Promotions
at court.
Chan. Mahummud Moula, the Sultan's uncle, received the name of Shere Shaw, and Molana Zea ul dien, that of Sidder Jehan. In the mean time Malleck Kerabeg was made one of the councillors of the Durbar; and Hassen one of his slaves, the son of a feller of rags at Guzerat, received the title of Chusero Chan, and through the King's unnatural affection for him, became the greatest man in the empire. He was appointed to the command of the armies of Malleck Cafoor and Shadi Chan, and at the same time to the honour of the Vizarit, without any one good quality to recommend him to those high employs.

The Sultan, whether to affect popularity, or in remembrance of his late situation, ordered all the prisons to be opened, by which The Sultan
affects popu-
larity.

VOL. I.

Qq

means



A. D. 1317.
Higer. 717.

means seventeen thousand were blessed with the light of day, and all the exiles were by proclamation recalled. He then commanded to give to the army a present of six months pay, and conferred upon many, other private benefits. He at the same time issued orders to give free access to all petitioners. He eased the petitioners of some of their taxes; but by too much relaxing the reins of government, disorder and tumult arose, which threw down to the ground the great fabrick raised by Alla ul dien. He gave himself up entirely to wine, revelry, and lust. These vices became fashionable at court, from whence the whole body of the people were soon infected.

Guzerat reduced.

Mubarick, in the first year of his reign, sent an army under the command of Ain ul Mulluck Moulteni, into the province of Guzerat, which had revolted. Moulteni was an Omrah of great reputation. He soon defeated the insurgents, cut off their chiefs, and settled the country in peace. The King conferred the government of Guzerat upon Ziffer Chan, whose daughter he had taken in marriage. Ziffer Chan soon after marched his army to Narwalla, the capital of Guzerat, where some disturbances had happened, reduced the rebels, confiscated their estates, and sent their moveable wealth to the King.

Mubarick reduces the Decan.

Mubarick Shaw, in the second year of his reign, raised a great army, and marched towards the Decan, to chastise Hirpaldeo, the son in law of Ramdeo, who, by the assistance of the other Rajas of the Decan, had recovered his country. The Sultan at his departure appointed Shahin, the son of a slave, to whom he gave the title of Offa Beg, governor of Delhi, during his absence. When he arrived near Deogire, Hirpaldeo and the other Rajas, who were then besieging the place, fled. But some Omrahs being ordered to pursue Hirpaldeo, he was brought back prisoner, fled alive and beheaded. His head was fixed above the gate of his own capital. The Sultan ordered



ordered his garrisons to be re-established as far as the sea, and built a mosque in Deogire, which still remains. He then appointed Malleck Ecklikki, one of his father's slaves, to command in the Decan. He, in imitation of his father, gave his catamite Chusero Chan the ensigns of royalty, sending him towards Malbar, with part of his army, then returned himself to Delhi.

A. D. 1318.
Higer. 718.

Malleck Affid ul dien, son to the Sultan's grand uncle, seeing the King daily drunk, and negligent of all the duties of a king or commander, began to entertain thoughts of the empire, and formed a conspiracy against his life. This plot however was discovered by one of the conspirators, and Affid ul dien was condemned to death. Whether Mubarick had found proofs that his brothers were concerned in this conspiracy, we cannot learn, but at that time he sent an assassin to Gualier, and these two unfortunate blind princes were inhumanly murdered, and the fair Dewildè brought to the royal Haram.

A conspiracy.

The Sultan's
cruelty.

Mubarick finding himself in quiet possession of all the kingdoms of Hindostan, abandoned those popular manners which he at first affected, and grew perverse, proud, vindictive, and tyrannical, despising all counsel, ill treating all his friends, and executing every thing, however bloody or unjust, by his obstinate, blind, arbitrary will. Ziffer Chan, Suba of Guzerat, among others, fell a victim to his tyranny, as also Offa Beg, upon whom he had heaped such favours, without any plausible pretences against either. He was infamous, in short, in every vice that can taint the human mind, and descended so far from the royal character, as to dress himself often like a common prostitute, and go with the public women to dance at the houses of the nobility. At other times he would lead a gang of those abominable prostitutes stark naked along the terraces of the royal palaces, and make them play their fountains upon the Omrahs

The Empe-
ror abandons
himself to
every species
of vice.



A. D. 1518.
Higer. 718. as they entered the court. These and such other vices and indecencies, too shocking to mention, were the constant amusements of this monster in the form of man.

Several insurrections
quashed.

After the death of Ziffer Chan, Hissam ul dien, uncle to Chusero Chan, who was also one of the Sultan's catamites, in the absence of the detestable slave, obtained the regency of Guzerat, where he had not been established long, till, in confederacy with a few Omrahs, he rebelled; but the other Omrahs of Guzerat rising in arms, defeated him, and sent him prisoner to Delhi, where he was not only pardoned, but permitted to resume his place in the King's favour; Malleck Odgi ul dien Toureshi being sent to Guzerat in his stead. About this time news arrived, that Malleck Ecklikki, governor of the Decan, had rebelled. The Sultan sent a great army to suppress that insurrection, who found means to seize the rebel and his principal adherents, and to send them to Delhi, where Malleck Ecklikki had his ears cut off, and the others were put to the torture. Ain ul Malleck Moulteni was advanced to the viceroyship of the Decan.

Chusero
Chan aspires
to the throne.

Chusero Chan, who had gone to Malbar, stayed there about one year. He plundered the country of about one hundred and twenty elephants, a perfect diamond of 168 Ruttyes, with other jewels and gold, to a great amount. His ambition was increased by his wealth, and he began to aspire to the throne. Not being able to join to his interest any of the Omrahs of his army, he formed the means of their destruction. For this purpose he called Malleck Tilbiga from the government of the island of Koohe, Malleck Timur and Malleck Mullhe Affghan, who were on different services, and gave out that he had orders to return to Delhi. These Omrahs having intelligence of his intentions, disobeyed his commands, and wrote a remonstrance to the Sultan, accusing Chusero Chan of conspiracy against the state. The Sultan,

on



on this, ordered them to seize him and send him prisoner to Delhi, <sup>A. D. 1319.
Higer. 719.</sup> which accordingly they found means to execute. But when he came before the King, he pleaded his own innocence so artfully, and blamed his accusers with such plausibility of truth, that the Sultan believing the whole proceeded from the disgust of their being commanded by his favourite, he recalled them; and notwithstanding they gave undoubted proofs of their assertions, the Sultan was determined to listen to nothing against this vile catamite. He dishonoured them, confiscated all their estates, turned them out to poverty and the world. The other Omrahs seeing that the enemies of Chusero Chan, right or wrong, were devoted to destruction, the men of the best principles among them made excuses, and obtained leave to retire to distant parts of the empire: while the abandoned to all honour, joined themselves to the catamite, who was now the object of universal dread, as well as the source of all benefits and promotion. This slave, in the mean time, cherished his own ambitious views, and began again to form measures for his own advancement. ^{Chusero continues his designs.}

To accomplish his purpose, he told the King, "That as his own fidelity and services had been by his Majesty so generously rewarded, and as he might still have occasion for them in the conduct of his military affairs, while the Omrahs, from the pride of family, were seditious and disobedient to his commands, he begged that he might be permitted to call some of his relations from Guzerat, in whom he could more certainly confide." The Sultan agreed to this request; and Chusero Chan sent a great sum of money by some of his agents to Guzerat, who collected about twenty thousand of the dregs of the people, and brought them to Delhi. Every place of profit and trust were conferred upon those vermin, which bound them fast to Chusero's interest; and also upon all the
villains.



A. D. 1326. villains about the city, who were remarkable for their boldness
 Kiiger, 720. and address.

Conspires a-
 gainst the
 Sultan's life.

The Sultan, in the mean time, going to hunt towards Jirsava, a plot was formed to assassinate him. But this was laid aside, on account of some difference in opinion among the conspirators: and therefore they resolved to perform their tragedy in the palace. The Sultan returned to Delhi, and, according to custom, gave himself up to his debaucheries. Chusero Chan was warm in his project, and took the opportunity of a favourable hour to beg leave of Mubarrick to entertain his friends in the outer court of the palace. The Sultan not only consented, but issued orders, to give them free access at all times; by which means the courts of the palace became crowded with those vermin.

The Sultan
 informed of
 the plot.

In the mean time, Cafi Zea ul dien, who was famous for his skill in astrology, though upon this occasion, we imagine, he consulted his own judgment and not the stars, ran into the presence and kissed the ground. "O King," said he, "Chusero Chan is concerting means for your assassination. If this should prove false his honesty will be the better established; if otherwise, caution is necessary, because life is the most inestimable jewel." The Sultan smiled at the old man, who had been one of his preceptors, and told him, he would make enquiry into that affair: while instantly Chusero Chan entered in a female dress, with all the affectations of a girl. The Sultan upon seeing the infamous catamite, repeated a verse to this effect. "If my beloved were guilty of ten thousand crimes, one smile from him and I forget them all." He then embraced Chusero, and actually did forget all that the Cafi had said.

His infatua-
 tion.

That night, as the Cafi was suspicious of treason, he could not go to rest, but walked out about midnight, to see whether the guards were watchful,



watchful. In their rounds, he met Mundule, uncle to Chusero Chan, A. D. 1321.
Higer. 721.
The old Cafi
murdered. who engaged him in conversation. In the mean time, one Jaherba came behind him, and with one stroke of a sword, stretched him upon the ground, having only strength to cry out, "Treason! Treason! Murder and treason are on foot!" while two servants who attended him, run off, screaming aloud, that the Cafi was assassinated. The guards started up in confusion, but they were instantly attacked by the conspirators, and massacred before they could prepare for their own defence.

The Sultan alarmed by the noise, asked Chusero Chan, who lay in his apartment, the cause of it. The villain arose to enquire, and going out on the terrace, stood for some time, and returning told the King, that some of the horses belonging to the guard, had broke loose from their picquets, and were fighting, while the people were endeavouring to lay hold of them. This satisfied the Sultan for the present; but soon after, the conspirators having ascended the stairs, and got upon the terraces which led to the royal sleeping apartment, they were stopped by Ibrahim and Ishaac, with all the porters of the private chambers, whom they immediately put to the sword. The Sultan hearing the clash of arms and groans of dying men so near him, rose up in great terror and confusion, running towards the Haram, by a private passage. Chusero Chan fearing The Sultan
assassinated. he might escape, rushed close after him, and seizing him by the hair in the gallery, struggled with him for some time. The Sultan being the stronger man, threw Chusero on the ground; but as he had twisted his hand in his hair, he could by no means disengage himself, till some of the other conspirators came, and with a stroke of a sabre, cut off his head and threw it down into the court, proclaiming the deed aloud to those below.

The



A. D. 1321.
Higer. 721.

A general
massacre in
the palace.

The conspirators in the court below, began to be hard pressed by the guards and the servants, who had crowded from all quarters, but upon hearing of the Sultan's fate, they all hastened out of the palace. The conspirators then shut the gates and massacred all who had not the good fortune to escape; particularly the younger children of Alla ul dien, Feredoon Chan, Ali Chan and Omar Chan. Then breaking into the Haram, committed all manner of violence upon the poor women.

Reflections
upon the Sul-
tan's death.

Thus the vengeance of God overtook and exterminated the race of Alla ul dien, for his ingratitude to Firose Shaw, and the streams of innocent blood which flowed from his hands. Heaven also punished Mubarick Shaw, whose name and reign are too infamous to have a place in the records of literature; did not our duty as a historian; oblige us to this disagreeable task. But notwithstanding, we have, in some places, been obliged to throw the veil of oblivion over circumstances too horrid to relate.

Chusero Chan
mounts the
throne.

This massacre happened on the fifth of Ribi ul Awil, in the year 721. In the morning Chusero Chan, surrounded by his creatures, mounted the throne, and ridiculously assumed the title of Nasir ul dien, or the supporter of religion. He then ordered all the slaves and servants of Mubarick Shaw, who he thought had the least spark of honesty, to be put to death, and their wives and children to be sold for slaves. His brother was dignified with the title of Chan Chanan, and married to one of the daughters of Alla ul dien, while he took Dewildè, the widow of Mubarick Shaw, to himself. He disposed of all the other ladies of the Seraglio among his beggarly friends.

The army now remained to be bribed, who loved nothing better than a revolution; for they had always, upon such an occasion, a do-
nation



nation of six months pay immediately divided from the treasury. A. D. 1321.
Higer. 721.
Brings over
the army to
his interest.
This trifle bought those dissolute slaves, who were lost to all sense of gratitude or honour.

The son of Kimmerah Kimar, the chief of a gang of thieves, received the title of Azim Malleck Shaista Chan, and was made Ariz Mumalick, while Ain ul Malleck became Alim Chan, and was appointed Amir ul Omrah *. Malleck Fuchir ul dien Jonah had the title of Chufero Chan, and the appointment of master of the horse, with many other distinguishing favours, with an intention to gain over the allegiance of his father, Ghazi Malleck, governor of Lahore and Debalpoor, of whom the usurper was in great fear. Notwithstanding his promotion, Fuchir ul dien Jonah was touched to the soul, to see the empire ridden by a gang of villains. His father also, who was reckoned a man of great bravery and honour in those days, was discontented at the infamous proceedings at court, and roused himself to revenge. He acquainted his son of his purpose, and he took the first opportunity to fly from Delhi and join his father. Honours conferred upon the conspirators.
Ghazi Malleck revolts from the usurper.

The usurper was in great perplexity upon the flight of Jonah, and began already to give his hopes to the wind. Ghazi Malleck immediately prepared for hostilities, and by circular letters, invited all the Omrahs to join his standard. A great many Subas put their troops immediately in motion; but Mogulti the Suba of Moulton, jealous of precedence, refused to join; upon which occasion, Pyram Ibah, a chief of some note in those parts, was prevailed upon to assassinate him.

Malleck Ecklikki, Suba of Samana, notwithstanding the usurper had been the occasion of his losing his ears, transmitted the letter of Ghazi Malleck to court, informing him of the rebellion, and

* Captain General.



A. D. 1321.
Hijr. 721.
The Suba of
Samana de-
feated.

taking the field against the confederates, received a signal defeat, and in his flight to Delhi, was fallen upon by the Zemindars and cut to pieces. The usurper sent Chan Chanan his brother, and Sufi Chan, with all on whom he could depend, against the confederates.

Ghazi Mal-
leck defeats
the usurper's
army, and
marches to
Delhi.

Ghazi Malleck, now joined by Byram Ibah, with the army from Moulton, and other Subas, advanced to meet the usurper's army, which he did upon the banks of the Sirusti. But as the troops of Ghazi Malleck were experienced in frequent wars with the Moguls, and those of Chusero enervated by indolence and debaucheries, and besides, lost to all sense of military honour, they were broke at the first onset, and all the public treasure, elephants and baggage were taken. This booty was divided in the field among the conquerors.

Chusero
marches out
of the city.

They then continued their march in triumph towards Delhi. The usurper, in great embarrassment, marched out of the city, and took possession of a strong post near the great pond of Alahi, with the citadel in his rear, and many gardens with high walls in his front. He then opened the treasury, and gave three years pay to his troops, leaving nothing but the jewels, of some of which he also disposed. The confederates advancing in sight, an action was expected next morning. But that night, Ain ul Muluck Moultoni drew off his forces from the usurper, and took the rout of Mindu. This struck great terror into Chusero's army. They however drew up in order of battle; and Malleck Tilbiga and Shaiста Chan opposing the confederates with great bravery, as they advanced through the lanes, were at length overpowered and slain. But their situation gave such advantages to the usurper's army, that they maintained their post till the evening; when the infamous Chusero fled with a few of his friends towards Jilput. In the way he was deserted by all his attendants, and obliged to conceal himself in a tomb, from whence he was dragged the next day, and ordered to be put to death, together with his brother, who was taken in a neighbouring garden.

He is over-
thrown, taken
and slain.

The



The day after this action, being the first of Shaban, all the Om-
 rahs and magistrates of the city came to pay their respects to the
 victor, and made him a present of the keys of the capital. He
 mounted his horse and entered Delhi in triumph. When he came
 in sight of the palace of a thousand pillars, he began to weep, cry-
 ing with a loud voice! "O ye subjects of this great empire, I am
 no more than one of you, who unsheathed my sword to deliver you
 from oppression, and rid the world of a monster. My endeavours,
 by the blessing of God, have been crowned with success. If there-
 fore any of the royal line remain, let them be brought, that justice
 may take place, and that we his servants may prostrate ourselves be-
 fore his throne. But if none of the race of Kings have escaped the
 bloody hands of tyranny and usurpation, let the most worthy of the
 illustrious order be elected among you, and I shall swear to abide by
 your choice."

A. D. 1321.
 Higer. 721.

Ghazi Mal-
 leck's mode-
 ration.

The people called out with one voice, that none of the princes
 were now alive; that as he had shielded them from the vengeance of
 the Moguls, and delivered them from the rage of a tyrant, none
 was so worthy to reign. Then seizing him, in a manner, by vio-
 lence, they placed him upon the throne, and hailed him King of
 the world. But he assumed the more modest title of Yeas ul dien,
 or the reformer of the religion. The reign of Chusero Chan was
 five months. Nothing in history can exhibit such an example of
 the dissolute and infamous manners of any age or nation, as we
 are presented with in the accounts of this wicked and shameful
 usurpation.

He mounts
 the throne by
 the name of
 Yeas ul dien.



SECTION XVI.

The Reign of Sultan YEAS UL DIEN TUGLICK SHAW.

A. D. 1321.
Higer. 721.
His pedigree
uncertain.

WE have no true accounts of the pedigree of Tuglick Shaw. It is generally believed, that his father, whose name was Malleck Tuglick, had been, in his youth, slave to Sultan Balin. His mother was one of the tribe of the Jits. But indeed the pedigrees of the Kings of the Patan empire, make such a wretched figure in history, that we could wish to omit them, were it not to show how far the depravity and corruption of a people can plunge them into the sink of slavery, and subject them to the vilest of men.

A wife prince.

When Sultan Yeas ul dien mounted the throne, he began to regulate the affairs of government, which had fallen into the utmost disorder, by the most salutary and adviseable methods, which gained him general esteem. He repaired the palaces and fortifications, founded others, and encouraged industry and commerce. Men of genius and learning were called to court; institutes of laws and government were established and founded upon the Coran, and the antient usages of the empire.

Promotions at
court.

Malleck Fuchir ul dien Jonah, the Sultan's eldest son, was declared heir apparent, with the title of Aligh Chan, and all the royal ensigns conferred upon him. His other four sons were entitled Byram Chan, Ziffer Chan, Mamood Chan, and Nusserit Chan. Byram Ibah, who had so effectually assisted him with the army from Moulton, was adopted his brother, by the title of Chufero Chan, and appointed viceroy of Sind, Outch and Moulton. Malleck Afid

ul



ul dien, his nephew, was appointed Barbeg, or lord of the prefence, A. D. 122.
Higer. 722. and Malleck Baha ul dien, his other nephew, Ariz Mumalick. Malleck Shadi, the Emperor's brother and son in law, was made vizier. Malleck Burhan ul dien had the vizarit of Deogire conferred upon him; and Tatar Chan the government of Zifferabad.

The Emperor in the mean time stationed troops upon the frontiers Troops station-
ed on the
frontiers. towards Cabul, and built forts to defend the country from the incursions of the Moguls, which he did so effectually, as not to be troubled by these invaders during his reign.

In the second year from his accession, Aligh Chan, with some of Aligh Chan
marches
against Arin-
kil. the old Omrahs, and the troops of Chinderi, Budaoon, and Malava, was dispatched towards Tilling, to chastise Lidderdeo, Raja of Arinkil, who had, during the late disturbances, wrested his neck from the yoke, and refused to send his tribute, while the Raja of Deogire had also swerved from his allegiance. Aligh Chan having advanced into those countries, began a barbarous war with fire and sword. Lidderdeo opposed him with some vigour, but was in the end obliged to retreat into the city of Arinkil, which Aligh Chan immediately invested.

The siege was carried on with great loss on both sides, till the Lays siege to
Arinkil, walls were battered down, and a practicable breach made. The Mahommedan army, in the mean time, on account of the hot winds and bad water, were seized with a malignant distemper, that swept hundreds to their graves every day. Many became desirous to return home, and spread false reports through the camp, which threw universal consternation among the army. As there had been no advices for above a month from Delhi, Shech Zuda Dimiski, Obeid the poet, and some others, who were companions of Aligh Chan, raised



A. D. 1322.
Hig. R. 722.

raised a report by way of jest, that Sultan Yeas ul dien was dead, and that a great revolution had happened in Delhi. Not content with this, they went to the tents of Malleck Timur, Malleck Mul Afghan, Malleck Cafoor Mordar, and Malleck Tiggi, who were the principal Omrahs in the camp, and told them, such and such was the state of affairs at Delhi, and that Aligh Chan, knowing them, as old Omrahs, to have an equal right with himself to the empire, had resolved to dispatch them.

which by the
desertion of
the Omrahs
he is con-
strained to
raise.

The Omrahs giving implicit belief to this false information, fled that night, with all their dependants, from camp. Aligh Chan, thus deserted, was under the necessity of retreating in great disorder, towards Deogire, whither he was pursued by the besieged, with great slaughter. In the mean time advices arrived from Delhi, that all was well, and Aligh Chan halted at Deogire, to collect his scattered army. The four Omrahs who fled, having disagreed among themselves, had each taken a separate rout, by which means they were fallen upon by the Hindoos, plundered of their elephants, camels, and baggage, and otherwise greatly harrassed in their march. Malleck Timur and Malleck Tiggi were both slain, while Malleck Mul and Malleck Cafoor were seized by their own troops, and brought prisoners to Deogire. An enquiry was made into their conduct, the authors of the disturbance seized, and all of them sent prisoners to Delhi. The Emperor ordered the propagators of the false intelligence to be buried alive, with this severe sarcasm: "That they had buried him alive in jest, but that he would bury them alive in good earnest."

Aligh Chan was obliged to retreat from Deogire, and brought only back three thousand horse of all his great army, to Delhi. He in two months, however, made great preparations, and, with a more
numerous



numerous army than the former, took the rout of Arinkil. He took in his way the city of Bedir, on the frontiers of Tilling, and other places, where he left garrisons. He then advanced to the capital, renewed the siege, and in a short time, reduced it. Some thousands of the unfortunate Hindoos were massacred, and Lidderdeo, with his family, taken prisoners. Aligh Chan sent the prisoners, their treasure, elephants, and effects, to Delhi, under charge of Kuddir Chan and Chaja Hadgee. Upon their arrival great rejoicings were made in the new citadel, which the Sultan had built, by the name of Tughlickabad.

A. D. 1323.
Higer. 723.

Aligh Chan
returns to
Arinkil, and
takes it.

Aligh Chan having appointed trusty Omrahs to govern the country of Tilling, proceeded in person towards Jagenagur *. In that place he took forty elephants from the Raja, and sent them to his father. Returning then to Arinkil, he staid there a few days, and continued his march to Delhi.

Takes Jage-
nagur.

In the beginning of the year 724, complaints arrived from Lucknouti and Sonnargaum, of the great oppressions committed by the governors of those countries. The Sultan appointed Aligh Chan to the government of Delhi, and with a great army, marched towards Bengal. When he had reached Nahib, Sultan Nazir ul dien, the son of Sultan Balin, who had remained in that government since the death of his father, arrived in a respectful manner, from Lucknouti, with many valuable presents. He was confirmed in his government of Lucknouti, Sonnargaum, Koru, and Bengal, and honoured with royal dignities; and the Emperor prepared for his return.

The Sultan
marches to-
wards Ben-
gal.

When he was passing near the hills of Turhat, the Raja of those parts appearing in arms, he pursued him into the woods. Finding his army could no longer continue the pursuit, he alighted, and call-

Reduces
Turhat.

* Now Cattack in Orissa.



A. D. 1325.
Higer. 725.

ing for a hatchet, cut down one of the trees with his own hand. The troops upon seeing this, set to work with such spirit, that the forest seemed to vanish before them, till they arrived at a fort surrounded with seven ditches full of water, and a high wall. The King immediately invested it, and began the siege, filled up the ditches, and broke down the wall in three weeks. He took the Raja, his family and wealth, and conferred the government of Turhat upon Ahmed Chan, and returned with his army towards Delhi.

Killed by
accident.

When the Emperor had reached Afghanpoor, he was met by Aligh Chan, with all the Omrahs of Delhi, to congratulate him upon his safe return. But his death was now approaching. His son had in that place raised a house in three days time, for his father's reception. The entertainment being over, the King was preparing to mount, and every body hastened out to be ready to accompany him. The roof of the building fell instantly in, and killed the Sultan, and five of his attendants, as he was rising to follow the Omrahs.

His death
ascribed to
various causes.

Some authors attribute this accident to the newness of the building, and the motion of the elephants that were preparing without. Others give it to design, with which they charge Aligh Chan, as the raising this unnecessary building seems indeed to indicate. But others ascribe it to lightning; so that the matter still remains in doubt. The death of Tuglich Shaw happened in the month of Ribbi ul awil, of the year 725, after a reign of four years and some months. Amir Chusero, who lived down to the end of this Sultan's reign, has favoured posterity with his history at large, by which it appears, that he was a great and virtuous prince.

SECTION



SECTION XVII.

The Reign of Sultan MAHUMMUD the son of YEAS UL
DIEN TUGHLICK SHAW.

AFTER the King's funeral obsequies were performed, Aligh Chan ascended the throne, by the title of Mahummud Shaw, and proceeded from Tughlick Abad, to Delhi. The streets of that city were strowed with flowers, the houses adorned, the drums beating, and every demonstration of joy exhibited. The Sultan ordered some elephants, loaded with gold and silver, before and behind him, which was scattered among the populace.

A. D. 1324.
Higer. 725.
Aligh Chan,
by the name
of Mahum-
mud Shaw,
mounts the
throne.

Tatar Chan, whom the Sultan's father had adopted, and appointed to the government of Zifferabad, was now honoured with the title of Byram Chan, and presented with a hundred elephants, a crore of golden rupees, two thousand horse, and the government of Bengal. To Malleck Sinjer Buduchshi, Mahummud gave seventy lacks in silver. To Malleck ul Muluck, eighty lacks; and to Molana Azid his preceptor, forty lacks, all in one day. Molana Nazir ul dien Cumi, had an annual pension of one lack, and Malleck Ghizni the poet another to the same amount.

His genero-
sity.

His generosity, in short, was, like his wealth, without bounds, which no man could well account for, there being no great sum in the treasury upon his accession. It is therefore probable that he had concealed the riches of the Raja of Arkilla, from his father, and that his liberality was supplied from the wealth of the Decan, which circumstance strengthens our suspicion that he was accessory to his father's death. Some writers, notwithstanding this suspicion, make long panegyrics upon his virtues and accomplishments. He, it must

His learning.

VOL. I.

S f

be



A. D. 1326.
Higer. 727.

be acknowledged, aimed at universal knowledge, was conversant in all the literature of the times, and a patron of learned men, giving them profusely pensions, for a magnificent subsistence.

His religion,

The Sultan was, at the same time, very strict with regard to public and private worship. He ordered prayers to be read in the mosques five times every day. He discouraged all intemperate pleasures, and set the example by his own rigid life. But it is to be suspected, and cruelty. that he acted the mean character of a hypocrite, for he was vindictive and inhuman, delighting in the blood of his subjects, and condemning them without distinction of right or wrong, to cruel and ignominious deaths.

The Moguls
invade Hindostan,

In the beginning of the reign of Mahummud, before the empire was properly settled, Tirim Siri Chan, chief of the tribe of Chighitta, a Mogul general of great fame, invaded Hindostan, in the year 727, with an innumerable army, with a view to make an entire conquest of it. Having subdued Limghan, Moulton, and the northern provinces, he advanced towards Delhi, with incredible expedition, and invested it. Sultan Mahummud, seeing he could not cope with the enemy in the field, and that the city must soon fall, began to sue for peace, sent an immense present in gold and jewels, to soften the Mogul chief, who at last consented, upon receiving almost the price of the empire, to return to his own country, taking Guzerat and Sind in his way, which he plundered of a world of wealth.

Retire with
an immense
treasure.

The Sultan's
conquests.

Sultan Mahummud turned his thoughts to war, and the regulation of his army. He subdued by different generals, many distant countries, such as Door, Summudir, Maber, Compila, Arinkil, Lucknouti, Sonnargaum, and Chittagaum, some of which provinces had revolted, and others had never been subjected by the arms of the Islamites. He soon after reduced the Carnatic to the extremities of the



the Decan, and from sea to sea, obliging all the Rajas to pay him tribute, by which means he again filled the treasury with money.

A. D. 1326.
H. ger. 727.

But during the convulsions which soon after shook the empire, all these foreign conquests were wrested from the yoke. The causes of the disturbances were chiefly these. The heavy imposts, which were, in this reign, tripled in some provinces. The passing copper money for silver, by a public decree. The raising 370,000 horse for the conquest of Chorrassan and Maverulnere; the sending 100,000 horse towards the mountains of Himmachil or Kirrigil; the cruel massacre of many Mahommedans as well as Hindoos, in different parts of Hindostan; and many other lesser reasons, which, for the sake of brevity, we shall forbear to mention.

The cause of disturbances in the Empire.

The imposts upon the necessaries of life, which were levied with the utmost rigour, were too great for the power of industry, and consequently the country was involved in distraction and confusion. The farmers were forced to fly to the woods, and to maintain themselves by rapine. The lands being left uncultivated, famine began to desolate whole provinces, and the sufferings of the people obliterated from their minds every idea of government, and subjection to authority.

Heavy imposts upon the necessities of life.

The copper money, for want of proper regulations, was productive of no less evils than that which we have already specified. The King, unfortunately for his people, adopted his ideas upon currency, from a Chinese custom of using paper upon the Emperor's credit, with the royal seal appended, for ready money. Mahummud, instead of paper, struck a copper coin, which being issued at an imaginary value, he made current by a decree throughout Hindostan. The mint was under very bad regulations. Bankers acquired immense fortunes by coinage, whilst the merchants made their pay-

Copper money.



A. D. 1329.
Higer. 730.
Villainies in
the mint.

ments in copper, to the poor manufacturers, at the same time that they themselves received for their exports, silver and gold. There was much villainy also practised in the mint; for a premium to those who had the management of it, the merchants had their coin struck considerably below the legal value; and these abuses were overlooked by the government.

But the great source of the misfortunes consequent upon this debasement of the coin, was the known instability of government. Public credit could not long subsist in a state so liable to revolutions as Hindostan; for how could the people in the remote provinces, receive for money the base representative of a treasury that so often changed its master?

The Sultan
obliged to
call in the
copper mo-
ney.

From these evils general murmurs and confusions arose throughout the Empire. The Sultan, to ease the minds of the people, was obliged to call in his copper currency. But there had been such abuses in the mint, that after the treasury was emptied, there still remained a heavy demand. This he was forced to strike off, and thousands were ruined. The Emperor himself was so far from winning by this indigested scheme, that he lost all he had in his treasury; and the bankers accumulated immense fortunes, on the ruin of their sovereign and the people.

The army not
being paid,
commit out-
rages.

Mahummud, by the advice of Amir Norose, a Mogul chief, who, with thousands of his tribe, had entered into the service, raised a great army. The Mogul buoyed up the Emperor's mind with the facility of reducing both Iran and Turan; but before these mighty projects could be put in execution, he fell in arrears to his forces. They, finding they could not subsist without pay, dispersed themselves over the empire, and carried pillage, ruin, and death, to every quarter.

The



These misfortunes comprehended the domestic transactions of many years. The public treasury being squandered by impolitic schemes and follies of various kinds, the King entered into a project to repair his finances, equally absurd with that by which they were principally ruined.

A. D. 1337.
Higer. 738.
The Sultan forms a scheme to fill his treasury.

Having heard of the great wealth of Chin*, Mahummud formed a resolution to subdue that kingdom; but to accomplish his design, it was first necessary to conquer the country of Himmatchil, which lies between the borders of Chin and Hindostan. He accordingly, in the year 738, ordered one hundred thousand horse, under the command of his sister's son Chufero Malleck, to subdue the mountainous country of Himmatchil, and fix garrisons as far as the frontiers of Chin. When this should be done, he proposed to advance in person with his whole force, to invade that empire.

The Sultan's scheme to conquer China.

The Omrahs and counsellors of state, went so far, as plainly to tell him, that the troops of Hindostan never yet could, and never would advance a step within the limits of that mighty empire, and that the whole was a visionary project. The Sultan insisted upon making the experiment, and accordingly this army was put in motion, and having entered the mountains, began to build small forts on the road, to secure a communication; proceeding in this manner to the boundaries of Chin, where a numerous army appeared to oppose them. As their numbers were by this time greatly diminished, and much inferior to that of the enemy, the troops of Hindostan were struck with universal dismay, upon considering their distance from home, the rugged ways they had passed, and the rainy season, which was now approaching; besides the scarcity of provisions, which now began to be severely felt. In this consternation they bent their march towards the foot of a mountain, where

The Omrahs endeavour to dissuade him from it.

The Sultan's army advance to the frontiers of China.

* China.

the



A. D. 1337. the savage inhabitants of the hills poured down upon them, and
Higer. 738. plundered their baggage, while the Chinese army lay in their front.

Their distress- In this dreadful situation they remained for seven days, suffering
ful situation. the extremities of famine without knowing how to proceed. At length such a heavy rain fell, that the cavalry were up to their bellies in water, which obliged the Chinese to remove their camp to a greater distance. Chusero Malleck then determined to endeavour to make his retreat, but the low country was quite covered with water, and the mountains with impervious woods. Their misfortunes now came to a crisis. Having lost the road, they found themselves in such an unfortunate situation, that they could find no way out but that by which they entered, which was now possessed by the enemy.

They are de- This whole army in short, in the space of fifteen days, fell a prey to
stroyed to a famine, and a victim to false ambition; scarce a man coming back
man. to relate the particulars, except those who were left behind in the garrisons. A few of them escaped indeed the rage of the enemy, but could not escape the more fatal tyranny of their Emperor, who ordered them to be put to death, upon their return to Delhi.

Kirshasib re- Baha ul dien, the Sultan's nephew, an Omrah of great reputation,
bels in the known more generally by his original name Kirshasib, who possessed
Decan. a government in the Decan, called Saghir, began to turn his thoughts upon the empire, and gained over many of the Omrahs of the Decan to his party. By their influence and the great riches which he had accumulated, his power became very formidable. He then attacked some Omrahs who continued firm in their allegiance, obliging them to take refuge in the fort of Mindu.

The Sultan having intelligence of the revolt, commanded Chaja Jehan, with many other Omrahs and the whole power of Guzerat,

to



to chastise the rebel. When the imperial army arrived before Deogire, they found Kirshasib drawn up in order of battle to receive them: but, after a gallant contest, he was defeated. He fled to-
A. D. 1338.
Higer. 739.
 wards Sajar; but not daring to remain there, he carried off his family and wealth to Campala in the Carnatic, and took protection in the dominions of the Raja of that place, with whom he had maintained a friendly intercourse.
He is over-
thrown.
Flies to the
Carnatic.

The Sultan, in the mean time, took the field, and arrived soon after at Deogire. He sent from thence Chaja Jehan with a great force against the Raja of Campala, by whom the imperialists were twice defeated: but fresh reinforcements arriving from Deogire, Chaja Jehan engaged the Raja a third time, and carried the victory. He took the Raja prisoner, but Kirshasib fled to the court of Bellaldeo, who fearing to draw the same misfortunes upon himself, seized upon him, and sent him bound to the general, and acknowledged his subjection to the empire. Chaja Jehan immediately dispatched the prisoner to court, where the Sultan ordered him to be flead, and shewn a horrid spectacle, all around the city; while the executioner proclaimed aloud, "Thus shall all traitors to their King perish."
His allies de-
feated.
He is taken
and flead
alive.

The Sultan was so much pleased with the situation and strength of Deogire, that, considering it more central than Delhi, he determined to make it his capital. But, upon proposing this affair in his council, the majority were of opinion, that Ugein was a more proper place for that purpose. The King, however, had previously formed his resolution. He therefore gave orders that the city of Delhi, which was then the envy of the world, should be rendered desolate, and that men, women, and children, with all their effects and cattle, should make a grand migration to Deogire. To add magnificence to the migration, he commanded trees to be tore up by the roots, and planted in regular rows along the road, to yield the emigrants a
The Sultan
making Deo-
gire his capi-
tal, calls it
Dowlatabad.
Destroys
Delhi.
 shade,



A. D. 1338.
Higer. 739.

shade, and that all who had not money to defray their charges should be maintained at the public expence. He ordered that for the future Deogire should be called Dowlatabad; raised noble buildings, and dug a deep ditch round the walls, which he repaired and beautified. Upon the top of the hill upon which the citadel stood, he formed large reservoirs for water, and made a beautiful garden. This change however greatly affected the empire, and distracted the minds of the people. But the Sultan's orders were strictly complied with, and the ancient capital left desolate.

The Sultan having effected this business, marched his army against the fort of Gundana, near Jinner. Nack-naig, who was chief of the Colies, opposed him with great bravery, but was forced to take refuge within his walls. As the place was built upon the summit of a steep mountain, inaccessible but by one narrow pass cut in the rock, the Sultan had no hopes of reducing it but by famine. He accordingly ordered it to be blockaded, and at the same time, made some ineffectual attacks, in which he was repulsed with great loss. The garrison becoming straitened for provisions, and having no hopes of the Sultan's retreat, delivered up the place at the expiration of eight months; and the Sultan returned to Dowlatabad.

Gundana
taken.

The viceroy
of Moultan
revolts.

He had not been long in his capital, when he heard that Malleck Ibah, the viceroy of Moultan, had rebelled, and was then reducing the country of Punjaab with a great army. The cause of the revolt was this: The Sultan having sent an order to all his Omrahs to send their families to Dowlatabad, the messenger who was dispatched to Moultan, presuming too much upon the King's authority, upon observing some delay, proceeded to impertinent threats. He one day told Byram Shaw's son in law, that he believed his father was meditating treason against the King. High words upon this arose between them, which in the end proceeded to blows; and the messenger



messenger had his head struck off, by one of Byram Ibah's servants. A. D. 1349.
Higer. 741.
Byram Ibah, knowing the vengeful disposition of the Sultan, was sensible that this disrespect to his authority, would never be forgiven, and resolved to seek refuge in arms.

The Sultan upon these advices, put his spears in motion, and hastened towards Moultan; and Byram Ibah, with an army numerous as the ants or locusts, prepared to dispute the field. Both armies at last met, and, eager for victory, engaged with great resolution; but after the dust of the field was laid with blood on both sides, misfortune darkened the standards of Byram Ibah, and his troops turning their backs upon glory, abandoned the field. The Sultan immediately gave orders for a general massacre of the inhabitants of Moultan; but Shech Rukun ul dien interceded for them, and prevented the effects of this horrible mandate. Byram Ibah was taken in the pursuit, and his head brought to the King, who returned towards Delhi. He is overthrown and slain.

At sight of their native country and city, all those who had been forced to Dowlatabad, began to desert the Sultan's army, and to disperse themselves in the woods. The Emperor, to prevent the consequences of this desertion, took up his residence in the city; whither he invited them, and remained there for the space of two years. But then he again revolved in his mind, the scheme of making Dowlatabad his capital. He removed his family, obliging the Omrahs to do the same, and carried off the whole city a second time, to the Decan; leaving that noble metropolis a habitation for owls, and the wild beasts of the desert. The Sultan resides at Delhi two years.

About this time, the taxes were so heavily imposed, and exacted with such rigour and cruelty, by the officers of the revenue, that the whole extent of that fertile country, between the two rivers, Oppressions, and unheard-of cruelty of the Sultan.

Vol. I.

T t

Ganges



A. D. 1341.
Higer. 742.

Ganges and Jumna, were particularly oppressed. The farmers, weary of their lives, in one day, set fire to their own houses, and retired to the woods, with their families and cattle. The tyrant having received intelligence of this circumstance, ordered a body of troops to massacre these unhappy people if they resisted, and if they should be taken, to put out their eyes. Many populous provinces were, by this inhuman decree, laid waste, and remained so for several years. The colony of Dowlatabad was also in great distraction; the people, without houses, without employment, were reduced to the utmost distress.

Instances of it.

The tyrannies of the execrable Mahummud exceeded, in short, any thing we have met with in history, of which the following is a horrid instance. When he remained at Delhi, he led his army out to hunt, as is customary with princes. When they arrived in the territory of Birren, he plainly told them, that he came not to hunt beasts but men; and without any obvious reason, began a general massacre of the wretched inhabitants. He had even the barbarity to bring home some thousands of their heads, and to hang them over the city walls. He, upon another occasion, made an excursion of the same nature towards Kinnoge, and massacred all the inhabitants of that city, and the adjacent country for many miles, spreading terror and desolation wherever he turned his face.

A rebellion in Bengal.

But to return to the chain of history: During this time, Malleck Fuchir ul dien, after the death of Byram Chan, rebelled in Lucknouti, having slain Kudder Chan, and possessed himself of the three provinces of Bengal *. The Sultan, at the same time, received advices, that Seid Hassen had rebelled in Maber. He ordered Ibrahim the son of Seid Hassen, and all his family, to prison; then marched in the year 742, from the sacking of Kinnoge, towards

* Bengal, at this time, was divided into three governments.

Maber.



Maber. When he had reached Dowlatabad, he laid a heavy tax upon that city and the neighbouring provinces, which awakened the people into rebellion; but his numerous army soon reduced all the unhappy insurgents to their former slavery. From that place the Sultan sent back a part of his army and Chaja Jehan to Delhi, while he himself marched with another force towards Maber, by the way of Tilling.

When Mahummud arrived before Arinkil, there happened to be a plague in that city, by which he lost a great part of his army. He himself had a violent struggle for his own life, and was obliged to leave Amad ul Malleck to command the army, and return towards Dowlatabad. On the way he was seized with a violent tooth-ach, and lost one of his teeth, which he ordered to be buried with much ceremony at Beir, and a magnificent tomb to be reared over it, which still remains a monument of human vanity and folly. Having arrived at Patan he found himself better, and halted to take medicines for some days. In this place he gave to Shahab Sultani, the title of Naferit Chan, and the government of Bidder, with its dependencies, which yielded annually, a revenue of one crore of rupees. He, at the same time, conferred the government of Dowlatabad and Marhat upon Cuttilich Chan his preceptor.

He proceeded from Patan in his palankie to Delhi, having heard of some disturbance among the Patans. He, at this period, gave leave to such of the inhabitants of Dowlatabad as were willing to return to Delhi, to follow him. Many thousands returned, but they had almost perished on the way by a famine, which then desolated the countries of Malava and Chinderi. When they came to Delhi, they found that the famine raged with redoubled violence in that city, in so much that very few could procure the necessaries of life. Mahummud, for once, seemed affected with human miseries.

A. D. 1342.
Higer. 742.

The Sultan
buries, with
great solemnity, one of
his teeth.

He returns to
Delhi.

The misery
of the inhabi-
tants.



A. D. 1342.
Hijer. 743.

He even for some time entirely changed his disposition, and took great pains to encourage husbandry, commerce, and all kinds of industry. He opened the treasury, and divided large sums to the inhabitants for these purposes. But as the people were really in great distress, they expended the money in the necessaries of life, and many of them were severely punished upon that account.

Rebellion of
the Afgans,

quelled.

Shahoo, a chief of the Afgans, about this time, commenced hostilities to the northward, pouring down like a torrent upon Moulton which he laid waste, and killed Begad the Sultan's viceroy, in battle, and put his army to flight. The Sultan having prepared an army at Delhi, moved towards Moulton, but Shahoo, upon the king's approach, wrote him a submissive letter, and fled to the mountains of Afganistan. The Sultan perceiving that it was idle to pursue him, returned to Delhi.

Dreadful fa-
mine at Delhi.

The famine continued still to rage in the city so dreadfully, that men eat one another. He ordered, in this distress, another distribution of money towards the sinking of wells, and the cultivation of lands, but the people weakened by hunger, and distracted by private distresses in their families, made very little progress, while the drought continued, and rendered their labour vain. At the same time, the tribes of Mindahir, Chohan, Miana, Batti, and others who inhabited the country about Samana, unable to discharge their rents, fled into the woods. The Sultan marched forthwith against them with his army, and massacred some thousands of these poor slaves.

The Gickers
invade Pun-
jâb.

In the year 743, Malleck Chunder, chief of the Gickers, invaded Punjâb, and killed Malleck Tatar the viceroy of Lahore in action. Chaja Jehan, upon this, was sent against him. The Sultan, in the mean time, began to entertain a ridiculous notion, that all the misfortunes

of



of his reign, proceeded from his not having been confirmed in the empire, by the Caliph of Mecca. He therefore dispatched presents and ambassadors to Arabia, and struck the Caliph's name in the place of his own, on all the current coin, and prohibited all public worship in the mosques, till the Caliph's confirmation should arrive. In the year 744, Hadgee Seid Sirfirri returned with the ambassador, and brought the Caliph's confirmation, and a royal dress. He was met without the city by the King in person, who advanced to receive him on foot, putting the Caliph's phirman upon his head, and opening it with great solemnity. Returning into the city, he ordered a grand festival to be celebrated, and public service to be read in all the mosques, striking out every King's name from the Chutba, who had not been confirmed from Mecca. Among the number of those degraded monarchs, was the Sultan's own father. He even carried this whim so far as to write the Caliph's name upon his houses, robes, and furniture. These, and some other ridiculous actions of the life of Mahummud, may reasonably make us suspect the soundness of his head. The Arabian ambassador, after being royally entertained, was dismissed with a letter to his master, full of respect, and with presents of immense value, and accompanied by Malleck Kabire, chief of the life guards.

A. D. 1343.
Higer. 744.
An embassy
sent to Mecca.

Ridiculous
behaviour of
the Sultan.

This year Kinsanaig, the son of Lidderdeo, who lived near Arinkil, went privately to Bellaldeo, the Raja of the Carnatic, and told him, "That he had heard the Mahomedans, who were now very numerous in the Decan, had formed a design of extirpating all the Hindoos; that it was therefore adviseable to prevent them in time." What truth there might be in this report we know not, but Bellaldeo acted as if he was convinced of such a scheme. He called a council of his nobles, in which it was resolved, that Bellaldeo should first secure his own country, by fixing his capital in a pass among the mountains, to exclude the followers of Mahommed from all

Schemes for a
revolt, formed
in the Decan.



A. D. 1344.
Higer. 745.

all those kingdoms. Kifnanaig in the mean time promised, when matters should be ripe, to raise all the Hindoos of Arinkil and Tilling to his assistance.

The Decan
lost to the
empire.

The Raja accordingly built a strong city upon the frontiers of his dominions, and called it Bigen, from the name of his son, to which the word Nagur or city is now added. He then began to raise an army, and sent part of it under the command of Kifnanaig, who reduced Arinkil, and drove Malleck Amad ul Muluck, the Sultan's viceroy, to Dowlatabad. Bellaldeo, and Kifnanaig, having joined their forces with the Raja of Maber and Doorsummund, who were formerly tributaries to the government of the Carnatic, they seized upon those countries, and drove the Mahommedans before them on all sides. In short, within a few months, the Sultan had no possessions in the Decan, except Dowlatabad.

The Sultan's
tyranny, and
distractions in
the empire.

The tyrannical Mahummud, upon receiving intelligence of those misfortunes, grew vengeful, splenetic, and cruel, wreaking his rage upon his unhappy subjects, without crime, provocation, or distinction. This conduct occasioned rebellion, robbery, and confusion, in all parts of the empire. The famine became daily more and more dreadful, insomuch that the Sultan, not able to procure provisions, even for his household, was obliged to abandon the city, and to open the gates, and permit the starved inhabitants, whom he had before confined, to provide for themselves. Thousands crowded towards Bengal, which, as we have before observed, had revolted from the Empire. The Sultan encamped his army near Cumpula, on the banks of the Ganges, and drew supplies from the countries of Oud and Kurrah. He ordered his people to build houses, which at length became a city under the name of Surgdewarie.

Insurrections
quashed.

In the year 745, Nizam Bain, a Zemindar, possessed of some lands in the province of Oud, and a fellow of an infamous character,

collected



collected a mob of the discontented farmers, and assumed the royal umbrella, with the title of Alla ul dien. But before the Sultan marched against him, Ain ul Muluck, Suba of Oud, raised his forces, and defeating him, sent his head to the King. Nuzerit Chan in the same year, who had taken the whole province of Bidder, at one crore of rupees, finding himself unable to make good that contract, rebelled; but Cuttulich Chan being ordered against him from Dowlatabad, expelled him from that government.

A. D. 1345.
Higer, 746.

During this period, Ali Shaw, who was sent from Dowlatabad to collect the rents of Kilbirgah, finding that country destitute of troops, assembled his friends, raised an army with the collections, and in the year 746, erected his rebellious standards, and took possession of Kilbirgah and Bidder. The Sultan, on this occasion, sent a reinforcement to Cuttulich Chan to suppress him. Cuttulich Chan arriving on the confines of Bidder, Ali Shaw came out and gave him battle; but being defeated, he shut himself up in the city. He was however soon obliged to capitulate, and was sent prisoner to the King, who banished him and his brother to Ghizni.

Rebellion at
Kilbirgah
quashed.

Ain ul Muluck having paid great attention to the King, and entirely gained his favour, was appointed to the viceroyship of Dowlatabad and Arinkil, in the room of Cuttulich Chan. But Ain ul Muluck himself looked upon this appointment as an impolitic step in the King, considering the services Cuttulich Chan had done to his affairs in the Decan, and the power he then enjoyed. And therefore thought it a snare laid to draw him quietly from his own Subaship, and then to deprive him of both. In the mean time a number of the clerks of the revenues being convicted of abuses in their office, were ordered to be put to death. Some of those who survived found means to escape to Ain ul Muluck, and endeavoured to confirm him in his former opinion of the King's intentions.

Ain ul Mu-
luck medi-
tates a rebel-
lion.

He



A. D. 1345.
Higer. 746.
Takes arms.

He accordingly disobeyed the King's order, and erected the standard of rebellion, sending a detachment of horse under the command of his brother, who, before the Sultan received any intelligence of his designs, carried off all the elephants, camels, and horses, that were grazing or foraging near the royal camp. The Sultan, in great perplexity, called the troops of Kole, Birren, Amrohe, Saman, and other districts adjacent, to his assistance; while Chaja Jehan joined him, with an army from Delhi. The Sultan moved his standards, for Ain ul Muluck and his brothers had now crossed the Ganges, and were advancing towards him, in great hopes that the Sultan's army, tired and disgusted with his tyrannical behaviour, would join them.

The Sultan
engages and
overthrows
him.

The Sultan, enraged at their presumption, mounted his horse, and, engaging them, after a short conflict, put them to flight. Ain ul Muluck was taken prisoner, and his brother Shoralla drowned in the Ganges, as he was swimming across, having been wounded in the action, while another brother was slain in the field. The Sultan was so prejudiced in favour of Ain ul Muluck, that he pardoned him, and restored him to his former dignities, saying, that he was certain that Muluck was a loyal subject, though he had been instigated to this rebellion by the malice and falsehood of others.

The Sultan
returns to
Delhi.

The Sultan marched from thence to Barage, to pay his devotions at the tomb of Sallar Musaood, one of the family of Sultan Mamood Ghiznavi, who had been killed there by the Hindoos in the year 557. He distributed great sums among the Fakiers, who resided at Barage, and then returned to Delhi. Another ambassador arrived at that time from the Caliph, and was received with the same distinguishing marks of respect as the former, and dismissed with rich presents. Not long after, a prince of the house of Abassi, arrived at Delhi, and was met by the Sultan, at the village of Palum, and he presented him with two lacs of rupees, a large tract of territory, a palace



palace and fine gardens. By way of respect to the Caliphat, he placed him upon his right hand, and even sometimes ridiculously condescended to sit down upon the carpet before him, and pay him obeisance.

A. D. 1346.
Higer. 747.

Some of the courtiers calumniated Cuttulich Chan, governor of the Decan, accusing him of oppressions and other abuses in his government, though a man of justice and integrity. The King recalled Cuttulich Chan to Delhi, ordering his brother Molana Nizam ul dien, to whom he gave the title of Alim ul Malleck, and placed at Burudge, to take charge of what remained to the empire of the Decan, till he should send some person from court. When the King's order arrived, Cuttulich Chan was digging a great pond or reservoir, which he begged his brother to compleat, and prepared to return to Delhi, with all the revenues of the Decan, which he had previously secured in a fort called Daragire, upon a mountain close to the city.

Cuttulich
Chan recalled
from the
Decan.

The Sultan, after the arrival of Cuttulich Chan, appointed four governors for the Decan, having divided it into four provinces, and determined to reduce it as before, to his obedience. To accomplish his purpose, he ordered a numerous army, under the command of Amad ul Malleck, an Omrah of great reputation, to march to Dowlatabad, and entered into articles with him, that he and the other chiefs should pay into the treasury seven crores of rupees annually for their governments. To make up this sum, and to gratify their own avarice, they plundered and oppressed that unfortunate country. At the same time the Sultan conferred the government of Malava upon Aziz, a mean fellow formerly a vintner, and told him, that the Amirs of Sidda* were dangerous persons in that country, therefore to endeavour to extirpate them.

The Sultan
determines to
reconquer
the Decan.

* Mogul captains, who entered into his service with Amir Norose.



A. D. 1346.
Higer. 747.
Encourages
husbandry.

The Sultan then marched back to his old cantonments at Surgde-
warie, and began to encourage cultivation, upon a new plan which
he himself had invented. He appointed an inspector, for the regu-
lation of all that related to husbandry, by the name of Amir Kohi,
who divided the country into districts of 60 miles square, under a
Shickdar, who was to be answerable for its cultivation and improve-
ment. Above one hundred Shickdars received their appointments
at once, and seventy lacks of rupees were issued out of the treasury,
to enable them to carry on this work.

A cruel mas-
sacre at Be-
dar.

The Sultan
promotes
men of low
birth.

Aziz Chumar, when he arrived at Bedar, invited the Amirs of
Sidda, to an entertainment, and assassinated eighty of them, with their
attendants. He wrote to the Sultan an account of this horrible mas-
sacre, who sent him back a present of a dress and a fine horse, for
his loyal services. Such were the morals of those wretched days!
The tyrannical Mahummud had now taken it into his head, that he
would be better served by people of low birth, than by the nobility.
He accordingly promoted Litchena a singer, Pira a gardener, Mun-
ga his son, Shech Baboo a weaver, Muckbil a slave, and other low
fellows, to the degree of Omrahs, and gave them the command of
provinces and high offices at court. He in this, forgot the advice
of the poet, who writes, that "He who exalts the head of a beggar,
and hopes great things from his gratitude, inverts the nature of things,
and nourishes a serpent in his bosom." This resolution of the tyrant,
was occasioned by a noble refusal of the Omrahs, to put his cruel
orders in execution.

Disturbances
in Guzerat.

In the mean time, Malleck Muckbil, entitled Chan Jehani, vizier
of Guzerat, with the treasure, and the Sultan's horses, set out for
Delhi. The Siddas of those parts, hearing of his intentions, way-
laid him with a body of horse, and, having robbed him, retired to
Narwalla. The Sultan hearing of this robbery, in a great rage pre-
pared



pared for Guzerat, leaving Malleck Firofe his nephew, governor at Delhi, and, in the year 748, marched to Sultanpoor, about 30 miles without the city, where he waited for some reinforcements. An address came from Aziz Chumar, begging leave to go against the Siddas, being nearer, and having a sufficient force, as he imagined, for that purpose. The Sultan consented to his request, at the same time expressing much doubt of his success, knowing him to be a dastardly and unexperienced officer. Aziz Chumar advanced towards the rebels; but in the beginning of the action, he was struck powerless with terror, and fell headlong from his horse. He was taken, and suffered a cruel death; his army being defeated with some loss.

A. D. 1347.
Hijr. 748.

Cowardice,
defeat, and
death of Aziz
Chumar.

The Sultan being informed of this disaster, marched from Sultanpoor. It was on this march that Mahummud is said to have asked Zeai Birni the poet, what crimes a King ought to punish with severity? The poet replied, that seven sorts of criminals deserved severe punishments; these were, apostates from their religion, shedders of innocent blood, double adulterers, rebellious persons, officers disobeying lawful orders, thieves and perverters of the laws. When he had reached the hills of Abu, upon the confines of Guzerat, he sent one of his principal Omrahs, Chan Jehan, against the rebels, who met them in the districts of Bai, and gave them a total defeat. The Sultan having halted at Baruge, sent Malleck Muckbil after them, who coming up with them as they were crossing the Nirbuda, put the greatest part to the sword. The few who escaped, taking protection with Madeo, Raja of Buckelana, were all plundered of their wealth.

Zeai Birni's
reply to the
Sultan.

The rebels
totally de-
feated.

The Sultan, upon this occasion, massacred many of the Siddas of Baruge, and plundered Cambait and Guzerat of every thing valuable, putting all who opposed him to the sword. He then sent Zein Dund Mugid ul dien to Dowlatabad, that he might seize

The Sultan's
cruelty in
Cambait and
Guzerat.

U u 2

upon



A. D. 1347.
Hijer. 748.

upon all the Siddas of those parts, to bring them to punishment. Alim ul Malleck, according to orders, summoned the Siddas from Raijor, Mudkil, Kilbirgah, Bidder, Bijapoor, Genjouti, Ruibaug, Kollchir, Hakeri, Berar, Ramgire, and other places. The Siddas, conformable to those orders, prepared for Dowlatabad, and when they were all collected, Alim ul Muluck dispatched them under a guard of fifteen hundred horse, to the royal presence.

The impri-
soned Siddas
forming a
conspiracy;

surprize and
take Dowlatabad.

When the Siddas were arrived upon the frontiers of Guzerat, fearing that the Sultan had a design upon their lives, they entered into a conspiracy for their own security. They, with one accord, fell upon their guard, slew Ahmed Latchin their chief, with many of his people, while the rest, under the command of Malleck Ali, fled to Dowlatabad. The Siddas pursued them, and, before any advices could arrive to put the place in a posture of defence, they took it by assault, being favoured by the troops within, who became seditious. Alim ul Muluck, with whose behaviour they were satisfied, was spared, but all the rest of the Emperor's officers were put to death, and the treasure divided among the conspirators.

Proclaim
Ismaiel Mu-
che King.

Sultan Ma-
humud
marches
against him.

A drawn bat-
tle.

The Siddas of Guzerat, and other parts, who were skulking about in the woods and mountains, hearing of the success of their brethren, joined them. Ismaiel Muche, one of the Amirs of their faction, was proclaimed King, by the name of Nasir ul dien. Sultan Mahummud hearing of this revolution at Dowlatabad, left Baruge, and hastened towards that city. The usurper having drawn out his army, waited to give battle to the King. The two armies accordingly met, and the Siddas, though greatly inferior in number, roused by their danger and wrongs, assaulted the imperial troops with such violence, that the right and left wings were beat back, and the whole army upon the point of flight. But many of the chieftains who fought in the van being killed, four thousand of the Siddas fled; and night

coming



coming on, left the victory undecided, so that both armies lay on the field of battle. A. D. 1347.
Higer. 748.

A council of war being in the mean time called by the Siddas, who had suffered greatly in the engagement, it was determined that Ismaeil Muche should retire into Dowlatabad, with a good garrison, and that the remainder should shift for themselves, till the Sultan should leave the Decan; when they resolved to assemble again at Dowlatabad. This wretched conduct was accordingly pursued. The Sultan ordered Amad ul Muluck, who was then at Elichpoor, to pursue the fugitives, while he himself laid siege to the city. The impolitic
conduct of the
Siddas.

In the mean time advices arrived, that Malleck Tiggi, the slave of Suffder ul Muluck, heading the Siddas of Guzerat, was joined by many of the Zemindars, by which means he had taken Narwalla, and put Malleck Muziffer, the Naib of Guzerat, to death; imprisoned Shech Moaz ul dien the viceroy, and was now marching to lay waste Cambait, having in his rout blockaded Baruge. An insurrec-
tion in Guze-
rat.

The Sultan upon this, left Kawman ul dien to carry on the siege of Dowlatabad, and with the greater part of his army, marched with great expedition to Guzerat. He was plundered in his way of many elephants, and a great part of his baggage, by the Hindoos: he lost also a great many men in defending himself. The Sultan having arrived at Baruge, Tiggi retreated to Cambait, and was pursued by Malleck Eusiph Buckera, whom the Sultan had detached after him. Tiggi having engaged the pursuers at Cambait, turned the chace upon them, killed Eusiph Buckera and many other Omrahs, while the rest retreated to the Sultan. The rebel ordered all the prisoners taken in the action, as well as those whom he had formerly in confinement, to be put to death; among the latter was Moaz ul dien, viceroy of Guzerat. The Sultan
marches a-
gainst the in-
surgents.
Part of his
army de-
feated.

Mahummud,



A. D. 1347.
Higer. 748.
The Sultan
pursues,

Mahummud, hearing of this cruelty, breathed revenge. He hastened to Cambait, and Tiggi, unable to oppose him, retreated to Affawil, but was closely pursued thither by the Sultan. The rebel continued his flight to Narwalla, and in the mean time, the Sultan, on account of a prodigious rain, was obliged to halt at Affawil a whole month. Advices were brought him at Affawil, that Tiggi, having recruited his army at Narwalla, was returning to give him battle. The Sultan immediately struck his tents and met the rebel at Kurri. Tiggi, having injudiciously ordered his men to intoxicate themselves with strong liquors, they attacked the Sultan with the fury of madmen; but the elephants in front, soon repressed this borrowed valour, and repulsed and threw into confusion the rebels. An easy conquest was obtained: five hundred prisoners were taken and put to death; and an equal number fell in the field. The Sultan immediately detached the Son of Eusiph Buckera in pursuit of the runaways, by the way of Tatta, whither Tiggi had fled; while the King went in person to Narwalla, and employed himself in settling Guzerat.

and over-
throws the
rebels,

A rebellion
in the De-
can.

News, in the mean time, arrived from the Decan, that the Siddas had assembled again under Hassen Cacu, had defeated Amad ul Malleck, who had fallen in the action, and had driven all the imperial troops towards Malava: That Ismaiel Muche had resigned his regal dignity, which Hassen Cacu had assumed, under the title of Sultan Alla ul dien. Mahummud was excessively chagrined, upon receiving this intelligence, and began to consider his own tyranny as the cause of all those disorders. He therefore resolved to govern with more mildness and humanity for the future. He called Malleck Firose, Chaja Jehan, Amir Kiah, Malleck Ghizni, and Sidder Jehan from Delhi with their troops, in order to dispatch them against Cacu.

Before



Before those Omrahs arrived, the King was informed that the usurper's army was prodigiously encreased. He therefore determined first, to settle Guzerat and Carnal *, and then to march in person to the Decan; but this business was not so soon accomplished, as he at first imagined; for he spent a whole year in regulating Guzerat, and in recruiting his army. The next year was also spent in besieging the fort of Carnal, reducing Cutch, and the adjacent territories. Some authors affirm, that Mahummud took the fort of Carnal; but others, of better authority, say, that he desisted from that attempt, upon receiving some presents from the Raja.

A. D. 1349.
Higer. 750.
The Sultan
resolves to
march in per-
son against
the rebels.

Zeai Birni informs us, that the Sultan, one day, about this time, told him, that the diseases of the empire were of such a malignant nature, that he had no sooner cured them in one place, than they broke out in another. He would therefore be glad to know what remedy now remained, to put a stop to this contagion.

Asks advice
of Zeai Birni,
the poet.

The poet replied, that when disaffection and disgust had once taken root in the minds of the people, they were not to be exterminated, without tearing up the vitals of the state: that the Sultan ought to be, by this time, convinced, how little was to be hoped from punishment. That it was therefore his opinion, in this case, that the King ought to invest his son with the government, and retire; which would obliterate all former injuries, and dispose the people to peace and tranquillity. The Sultan, says Birni, answered in an angry tone, "That he had no son whom he could trust, and that he was determined to scourge his subjects for their insolence, whatever might be the event."

who advises
him to resign
the crown to
his son.

He rejects the
advice.

The Sultan, soon after this conversation with Zeai Birni, fell sick at Kondal. He had previously sent Chaja Jehan and Amad ul Muluck to Delhi, on account of the death of Malleck Kabire, the viceroy,

Falls sick.

* Now Joinagur.



A. D. 1351.
Higer. 752.

Recovers and
marches to-
wards Tatta.

Dies.

His execrable
character.

viceroi, and called most of the principal men of the empire, to the royal camp. Having recovered a little from his disorder, he mustered his army, and sent to collect boats at Debalpoor, Moulton, Ouch and Sewistan, which he ordered towards Tatta. Marching then from Kondal, he arrived on the banks of the river, which he crossed in spite of Tiggi; and was on the other side joined by five thousand Mogul horse. From thence he took the rout of Tatta, to chastise the Sumrahs, for giving the rebel protection. Arriving within thirty crores of that city, he halted to pass the first days of the Mohirrim; and when that fast was over, having eat fish to excess, he was seized with a fever. He would not however be prevailed upon to stop, but, getting into a barge, he proceeded to within fourteen crores of Tatta, and upon the banks of the Sind, on the twenty first of Mohirrim, in the year 752, this tyrant was conquered by death, and shut up in the dark dungeon of the grave. He reigned twenty seven years; during which time, he seems to have laboured with no contemptible abilities, to be detested by God, and feared and abhorred by all men.

SECTION XVIII.

The Reign of Sultan Moazim Mohizzib FIROSE SHAW,
the son of Sallar Rigib.

Firose Shaw.

FIROSE Shaw was nephew to the Emperor Yeaz ul dien Tughlick Shaw; and the late Sultan Mahummud, having conceived great friendship for him, designed to make him his successor, and for that purpose, recommended him upon his death-bed, to the Omrahs. Upon Mahummud's demise the army fell into the utmost confusion.



confusion. Firose Shaw having gained over the majority of the Omrahs to his party, prevailed, with presents, upon the Mogul mercenaries to move to some distance from the camp, to prevent disturbances, till he should reduce the rest of the army to obedience.

A. D. 1351.
Higer. 752.

Amir Norose, an Omrah, who commanded a great body of the imperial troops, deserted that night, and, having joined Altu Chan, the general of the Mogul mercenaries, told him, that now was the time to plunder the late Emperor's treasure, and to retreat to their native country. Altu Chan was easily prevailed upon to adopt this lucrative scheme. They therefore returned next morning to the camp, which was still in very great confusion, and after a very sharp skirmish, loaded some camels with treasure. Firose Shaw, to secure himself from further depredations, led the army to Sewan, and took every possible means to defend himself against the avarice of the mercenaries.

Designs of the
Mogul mer-
cenaries.

The Omrahs, the day after this movement, waited upon Firose Shaw, and intreated him to mount the throne. After many pretended excuses, he favoured the Omrahs with his consent, and was accordingly proclaimed Sultan.

Firose Shaw
mounts the
throne.

He, the very first day of his reign, gave orders to ransom many prisoners, who, during the late confusion, had fallen into the hands of the people of Tatta: and upon the third day, he marched against the Mogul mercenaries, took many of their chiefs prisoners, and forced the rest to fly towards their own country.

Defeats the
Mogul mer-
cenaries.

The Sultan, soon after, directed his march to the fort of Bicker, and gladdened the face of the court with princely presents, and gave



A. D. 1351.
Higer. 752.
His liberality,
benevolence,
and charity.

very liberally to the Zemindars of Bicker and Sewistan. He from thence sent Amad ul Muluck and Amir Ali Ghorî against Tiggi, with a part of his army, and marched himself towards Outch, where he did many acts of benevolence and charity.

Chaja Jehan
sets up, at
Delhi, his
own adopted
son.

At Outch the Emperor received advices from Delhi, that Chaja Jehan, a relation of the late Sultan, now about ninety years of age, had placed upon the throne, a boy whom he had adopted, by the name of Sultan Yeas ul dien Mahummud, and had massacred a number of the citizens who had refused to pay him allegiance.

The Sultan
sends to ex-
postulate with
him.

Firose Shaw sent Seif ul dien Shanapil, to expostulate with the old man, who, he thought, was now in the dotage of years, with promises of forgiveness and favour, if he would relinquish his ridiculous scheme. The Emperor himself in the mean time remained with the army, to regulate the territory of Outch. He was soon after joined by Malleck Muckbul Amud ul Muluck vizier of the empire, who received a Çelat and a confirmation of his former dignity.

Chaja Jehan
sends an em-
bassy to the
Sultan,

Firose Shaw having reached Hassi on his way to Delhi, met an ambassador from Chaja Jehan, acquainting him, that now the empire was in the hands of Sultan Mahummud's family, and therefore, that it would be no more than justice in him, to acknowledge the title of the young King, and act as Regent, during the minority. The Sultan immediately convened the Omrahs before the ambassador, and asked them whether they knew any of the male issue of Mahummud. They all declared, that unless Malana Cumal ul dien, an Omrah then present, knew of any, they were perfectly strangers to any surviving issue of Mahummud. Molana made answer, that though one should remain of the issue of the former Sultan, it was now ad-
viseable



viseable to stand by what was already done. We have reason to believe from this circumstance, that the youth who was set up at Delhi, was actually a son of Sultan Mahummud, though it was, at that time, prudent in the Omrahs not to acknowledge him.

The Emperor, after the council, sent Daood Molana Zada the ambassador back to acquaint Chaja Jehan of what had passed, and to advise him to accommodate matters in an amicable way. When Daood arrived in the city, a number of the principal men in the place hastened to the camp of Firose Shaw, and made their submission. Much about the same time, advices were received from Guzerat, that Mahummud Tiggi was defeated by Amud ul Muluck: and that very day, a son was born to the Emperor, whom he named Fatte Chan. These fortunate circumstances concurred to strengthen the Sultan's interest.

Chaja Jehan, perceiving that he could not support the young King, made overtures towards an accommodation, to Firose Shaw. He sent some respectable Omrahs to intercede with the Sultan for his pardon, and to solicit leave to pay his respects in person. The Sultan consented, and accordingly the old man, with his head bare, and his turban hung round his neck, came, accompanied by some of the principal men of his party, to make his submission. The King, according to his promise, gave him his life, but ordered the Cutwal of Hassen to take him under his care, which was a kind of imprisonment. Malleck Chattab, one of Chaja Jehan's associates, was banished to Karkinda, and Sheck Zadda Gustami expelled the court.

Upon the second day of Regib, in the year 752, Firose Shaw marched into Delhi, and mounted the imperial throne. He immediately

X x 2

diately



A.D. 1352.
Higer. 753.

diately began to administer impartial justice to his people, who flocked from all quarters, with their petitions. He, in the mean time, conferred offices and titles upon his Omrahs.

Hunts at
Sirmore.

Upon the fifth of Siffer, in the following year, he, in order to hunt, removed his court towards the hills of Sirmore, and reduced several Zemindars to obedience. He, in the mean time, had a son born to him at Delhi, whom he named Mahummud Chan, and ordered great rejoicings to be made upon the occasion; distributing his favours with a liberal hand.

Builds a
palace.

Rebellion in
Bengal.

In the year 754, the Sultan hunted at Callanore. He ordered, upon his return, a palace to be built upon the banks of the Surfuti; and towards the end of the year, appointed Chan Jehan to the vice-royship of Delhi. He himself, in the mean time, marched towards Lucknouti, to subdue Elias Hadgee, who had assumed the title of Sultan Shumse ul dien, and possessed himself of all Bengal and Behar, even to Benaris. When he had arrived in the neighbourhood of Gorukpoor, the Zemindars of that place, Odeysing and Rai Capoor, having brought proper presents, were admitted to his presence.

The Sultan
having in
vain tried to
force the re-
bels to battle,

The Sultan having penetrated as far as Punduah, one of the residences of the princes of Bengal, Elias Hadgee retreated to a strong post at Ackdalla, whither the Sultan pursued him. An action ensued, but Elias Hadgee secured himself in his post, which obliged the Sultan to surround him, the place being almost inaccessible. Things having continued in this situation for twenty days, Firose Shaw, intending to change his ground, and to encamp on the banks of the Ganges, went out to reconnoitre. The enemy imagining that he meditated a retreat, advanced out of their post, and drew up in order of battle. But when they saw that the Sultan was preparing to attack them, they again retreated within their works, but with
such



such precipitation and confusion, that 44 elephants, and many standards, fell into the Sultan's hands. The rainy season coming on with great violence, a kind of peace was patched up between them, and the Sultan returned disappointed to Delhi.

In the year 755, the Sultan built the city of Firoseabad, adjoining to that of Delhi; and in the following year marched to Debalpoor, where he made a canal 100 miles in length, from the Suttuluz to the Jidger. The King, in the year 757, between the hills of Mendouli and Sirmore, cut a channel from the Gion or Jumna, which he divided into seven streams; one of which he brought to Hassi, and from thence to Beraisen, where he built a strong castle, calling it by his own name. He drew soon after, a canal from the Cagar, passing by the walls of Sirsutti; and joined it to the rivulet of Kerah, upon which he built a city, named after him, Firoseabad. This city he watered with another canal from the Gion or Jumna. These public works were of prodigious advantage to the adjacent countries, by supplying them with water for their lands, and with a commodious water-carriage, from place to place.

An embassy about this time arrived, with presents and new conditions of peace from Bengal, which the Sultan accepted, and soon after ratified the treaty. Bengal became in a great measure independent of the empire, paying only a small acknowledgment annually, by way of present. He exacted no other terms of the Decan; so that these two great members were now lopt off from the government of Delhi.

In the year 759, the Sultan of Bengal sent a number of elephants and other rich presents, to Delhi, which was amply repaid in Arabian and Persian horses, jewels, and other rich curiosities. But when

the



A. D. 1357.
Higer, 759.

Invasions of
the Moguls.

the imperial embassy arrived at Behar, they received news of Shumse ul dien's death, and that his son Afcunder Chan had acceded to the throne. They thought proper not to proceed further, and returned to Delhi. The Sultan, being in the same year encamped at Semana, received advices that the Moguls had made an incursion as far as Debalpoor. He forthwith ordered Malleck Kabool, with a great army, against them; but the Moguls, before his arrival, had laden themselves with spoil, and had retreated towards their own country.

The Sultan
invades Ben-
gal.

Notwithstanding of the treaty of 757, the Sultan, in the year 760, resolved upon another expedition into Bengal. Having arrived at Zifferabad, he cantoned there his army, during the rains. When he lay at this place, Shech Zadda Buftami, who had been banished, returned ambassador from the Caliph of Misser, with a chelat; for which he was graciously received, and dignified with the title of Azim ul Muluck. An embassy having been, in the mean time, dispatched to Afcunder Chan, Sultan of Bengal, returned with another on his part, and with rich presents. The King not being satisfied with these concessions, marched, after the rains were over, towards Lucknouti, and on his way conferred the ensigns of royalty upon the Prince Fatte Chan his son. He gave him masters for his instruction, to whom the royal youth gave great attention.

A peace with
Afcunder,
Sultan of
Bengal.

The Sultan having arrived at Pandwah, Afcunder, after the example of his father, retreated to Ackdalla, and shut himself up in that place. Being however closely invested, and reduced to great straits, he sent 48 elephants, and other presents, to the Sultan, with overtures of peace. In a few days the terms were agreed upon, and the Sultan marched to Jionpoor, where he cantoned his army for another season, and then moved down behind the mountains, towards Jagenagur.

Firose



Firose Shaw having crossed the river Mendri, arrived at the capital of the Raja of Jagenagur, which was also called Benaris. The Raja, upon the Emperor's approach, fled towards Tilling. Having plundered the country, Firose Shaw returned, and, upon his way, was met by the Raja of Beerbhan, who presented him with 37 elephants, and other valuable presents, upon consideration of not ravaging the country. The Sultan having received the presents, changed his rout, and, as he passed through the woods of Puddmawitti, which abounded with elephants, he caught 33 of them, and killed a few in the chase. He then continued his march, and arrived at Delhi, in the year 762.

A. D. 1358.
Higer. 760.
Firose Shaw
ravages Jage-
nagur.

Firose Shaw, who had much at heart the improvement of his country, was informed, that near Hirdar there was a mountain from which there issued a great stream of water, which fell into the Suttuluz; and that beyond that place there was a small rivulet called Selima, divided only by a rising ground, from the large stream which we have just mentioned. The Sultan considered, that by making a cut through this eminence, the great stream might be carried into the rivulet, and so form a river to water the countries of Sirhind and Munfurpoor, from whence it might be carried to Sunnam, and so render great tracts of land fertile. He therefore marched immediately that way, and ordered fifty thousand labourers to be collected together to cut the passage. When the workmen were in this place employed in digging to great depth, they found some immense skeletons of elephants in one place, and in another, those of a gigantic human form, the arm bones of which measured guzes. Some of the bones were in their natural state, and others petrified.

Scheme for
improving
the lands of
Sirhind.

The Sultan having finished this great work, built a fort at Sirhind, which he called Firosepoor. He from that place marched towards the mountains of Nagracut, where he was overtaken by a storm of hail

Firose Shaw
reduces Na-
gracut.



A. D. 1360.
Higer. 761.

hail and snow. He however reduced the Raja of those parts; after sustaining some loss on his side, and confirmed him again in his dominions; changing the name of Nagracut, to that of Mahummud abad, in honour of the former Sultan. Firose Shaw was told here, that the Goddess, whom the Hindoos worshipped in the temple of Nagracut, was the image of Noshaba, the wife of the great Secunder, which that conqueror had left with them. The name of the idol is now changed to that of Jewallamuckie. In the temple there was also at that time, a fine library of the books of the Brahmins, consisting of one thousand and three hundred volumes.

The Sultan ordered one of those books, which treated of philosophy, astrology, and divination, to be translated into the Persian language, and called it Dellael Firose Shawi *. The Sultan, after the conquest of Nagracut, moved down by Sind towards Tatta, where Jambani, who had been always a subject of Delhi, had rebelled and fortified himself. The Sultan invested the city; but as provisions and forage became excessively scarce, and the rains had set in with great violence, he was obliged to raise the siege, and march to Guzerat. He there spent the season in hunting, and after the rains, he conferred the government of Guzerat upon Ziffer Chan, and returned again to Tatta. Jambani capitulated, and delivered himself up to the Sultan, who carried him, and the principals of his faction, to Delhi; but after some time, he took him again into favour, and sent him to resume his former government.

which he reduces.

* Dellael Firose Shawi signifies the arguments of Firose Shaw. Some authors relate, that the image now worshipped at Nagracut, is not that of Noshaba, which, say they, Firose Shaw sent to Mecca, where it was buried before the door of the great mosque. It is not improbable, but Alexander, who penetrated to the Indies, might have left an image of one of the Grecian Goddesses, upon the frontiers of his conquests. The Brahmins might have, with less absurdity, converted this foreign Goddess into one of their own growth, than those holy persons at Rome, who have changed the statue of Jupiter Tonans into one of St. Peter; disgracing with a parcel of keys, that hand which formerly held the thunder.

In



In the year 774, Malleck Muckbool Chan Jehan † died, and his son was honoured with his titles. Nothing remarkable happened, till two years after, when the Sultan was plunged into the gulf of affliction, by the death of his favourite son Fatte Chan, a prince of great expectations.

A. D. 1372.
Higer. 774.
The Vizier
and Prince
Royal die.

Ferose Shaw, in the year 778, was informed that the revenues of Guzerat were greatly deficient of the collections. This induced him to listen to the proposals of Chaja Shumse ul dien Wamaghani, who offered to give one hundred elephants, forty lacks of rupees, four hundred Abassinian slaves, and forty Arabian horses, every year, over and above the present payment, should he be appointed to that government. The Sultan replied, that if the present viceroy, whose name was also Shumse ul dien, the successor of Ziffer Chan, who was dead, would consent to give as much, he should be continued. But to this the viceroy would not agree, and therefore the Sunnuds were granted to Wamaghani, and he forthwith set out for Guzerat. Not being able the next year to perform his promise, he withheld the revenue, and rebelled, which was a just punishment upon the Sultan for his folly and avarice. The rebel however, having greatly oppressed the people of his province, a conspiracy was formed against him, and, by the assistance of the Siddas, they seized him, and sent his head to Delhi. This was the only rebellion which happened during this Sultan's reign. The government of Guzerat was conferred upon Malleck Mufirrah, with the title of Firhit ul Muluck.

Rebellion in
Guzerat
quashed.

There was a petty insurrection among the Zemindars of Atava, in the year 779. It was however soon crushed, and the insurgents brought to punishment, while forts were built to keep them in proper subjection. In the year 781, the Sultan marched towards Samana,

An insurrec-
tion at Atta-
va.

The Sultan's
progress to
the mountains
of Saitoor.

† The Vizier.

VOL. I.

Y y

Amballa,



A. D. 1379.
Higer. 781.

Amballa, and Shawabad, as far as the foot of the mountains of Saitoor, and after demanding his tribute from the Rajas of the hills, which they paid him, he returned to his capital.

Revenge too
severely the
death of Seid
Mahummud.

Much about this time information was brought to the Emperor, that the Zemindar of Kitter, whose name was Kirgu, had invited Seid Mahummud, Suba of Budaon, and a number of his family, to his house, where he basely assassinated them. The Sultan enraged at this villainy, marched immediately that way, and took severe vengeance upon the associates and kindred of the assassin, putting them without distinction to the sword, and levelling their houses with the ground. The murderer himself made his escape to the mountains of Cumaoon, and was protected by the Rajas of those parts. The Sultan ordered a detachment of his army against them. They brought back near thirty thousand of those unhappy mountaineers, who were all condemned to slavery. The Sultan's justice in this case, degenerated into extremefeverity. Neither did the misfortunes brought upon those miserable captives, satisfy his thirst for revenge. He returned, every year, under pretence of hunting, to that unhappy country; but the people, and not the beasts of the forest, were his prey. He by degrees cut off all the inhabitants, and converted whole provinces into a wilderness.

The Sultan
becomes aged
and infirm.

Age and infirmity began, in the year 787, to press hard upon Ferose Shaw. Chan Jehan the Vizier, having the sole management of affairs, became very powerful in the empire. The Sultan was so much under his direction in all things, that he had the effrontery falsely to accuse Mahummud Chan, the King's son, of a design against his father's life, in conjunction with Ziffer Chan, Malleck Eacoob, Malleck Summa ul dien, and Malleck Kummal ul dien. He brought the old man firmly to credit this accusation, and obtained his authority to secure the supposed conspirators. Ziffer Chan was accordingly recalled from Mahoba, and confined.

His son falsely
accused of
a design
against his
life.

A party



A party was sent to seize the Prince, who having previous intelligence of the design against him, began to provide for his security, placing guards, and fortifying himself in his own palace. In this situation he remained shut up for some days; and at last, having obtained leave for his wife to visit the King's Zinnana, he put on his armour, went into the close chair, and was carried into the Seraglio. When he discovered himself in that dress, the frightened women ran screaming into the Sultan's apartment, and told him, that the Prince had come in armour with a treasonable design. The Prince having followed them, presented himself to his father, and falling at his feet, told him with great emotion, "That the suspicions he had entertained of him were worse than death itself. That he came therefore to receive it from his own hands. But first he begged leave to inform him, that he was perfectly innocent of the villainous charge which the Vizier had purposely contrived to pave his own way to the throne."

A. D. 1385.
Higer. 787.
The Prince's
contrivance
to undeceive
the Sultan.

Feroze Shaw, sensible of his son's sincerity, clasped him in his arms, and weeping, told him he had been deceived; and therefore desired him to proceed as his judgment should direct him, against the traitor. Mahummud upon this went out from the presence, and ordered twelve thousand horse to be in readiness. With this body he surrounded the Vizier's house that night, who upon hearing of the Prince's approach, put Ziffer Chan to death, and collecting his friends, came out to engage him in the street. Upon the first onset, the traitor was wounded, and drew back to his house. He fled immediately towards Mewat, and the Prince seized all his wealth, and cut off his adherents.

The Vizier
punished.

Feroze Shaw, immediately after these transactions, resigned the reins of government into the hands of his son, and abdicated the throne.

The Sultan
resigns the
crown to his
son.



A. D. 1387.
Hijer. 789.

throne. The Prince assuming the title of Mahummud Shaw Nazir ul dien ul Dunia, ascended the throne in the month of Shaban 789; and immediately ordered the Chutba to be read in his own and his father's name. He settled the offices of state, and distributed Chelats among the Omrahs. Malleck Eacoob, an Omrah in great repute, was promoted to the government of Guzerat, with the title of Secunder Chan.

The Vizier
delivered up
and slain.

Secunder Chan having arrived at Mavat, upon his way to his government, Goga Chohan, with whom Chan Jehan the Vizier had taken refuge, fearing the Sultan's resentment, seized him, and sent him bound to Secunder Chan, who cut off his head, and sent it to Delhi.

The Sultan
hunts at Sir-
more.

Rebellion in
Guzerat.

Mahummud Shaw went with his army, in the year 790, towards the mountains of Sirmore, to hunt, according to the custom of sovereigns. When he was employed in the diversion of the chace, advices were received, that Firrhut ul Muluck, at the head of the Siddas of Guzerat, had risen in rebellion, defeated and slain Secunder Chan. The Sultan hastened to Delhi; but, as if all at once infatuated, he gave himself up entirely to pleasure, and seemed to be insensible of the loss which he had sustained, and of the dangers in which his conduct had involved him. When his old Omrahs attempted to rouse him from his lethargy, he turned them from his presence, and filled their employs with pimps and court flatterers.

Bha ul dien
conspires
against the
Sultan.

The Sultan's nephew, Bha ul dien, resolved to rush upon him in the midst of his dream of pleasure. He, for this purpose, conspired with the disgraced Omrahs, and arming one hundred thousand slaves, erected the standard of rebellion. The Sultan immediately dispatched Malleck Zehir ul dien Lahori, to treat with the rebels. When he came to their camp, which was pitched without



without the city, the mob pelted him with stones, and obliged him to retire, very much bruised and wounded. Mahummud seeing no hopes of a peaceable accommodation, began, at length, to bestir himself, and advanced with his army against the conspirators, and, after a bloody contest, drove them into the city. They immediately possessed themselves of the palace, and again renewed the fight. The city became now a horrid scene of slaughter and confusion. During the space of two days and two nights, there was nothing but death in every street: friends and foes, victors and vanquished, were jumbled together without any possibility of distinction.

A. D. 1387.
Higer. 789.

A dreadful
massacre in
the city.

The slaves, upon the third day, brought out the old King, in his Palakie, and set him down in the street between the combatants. When the young Sultan's troops saw their former master, their affection returned, and, imagining that this was a voluntary deed of his, they, at once, deserted the prince, and crowded with shouts of joy to Firose Shaw. Mahummud fled instantly, with a small retinue, to the mountains of Sirmore. Both parties looking up to the aged Monarch, settled themselves into peace in his presence.

The old King
being placed
between the
combatants,

both parties
go over to
him.

Feroze Shaw, unable to govern, on account of the infirmities of age, placed, by advice of the Omrahs, Tughlick Shaw, the son of Fatte Chan, and his own grandson, upon the throne. The slaves, in the mean time, assassinated Amir Hassen, the Sultan's son in law, for having endeavoured to support Sultan Mahummud: and even the first orders issued by Tughlick Shaw, when he mounted the imperial throne, was to kill all the adherents of Mahummud, wherever they should be found.

Feroze Shaw
places his
grandson on
the throne.

Feroze Shaw, who had arrived at the age of ninety, died in the year 790. Though no great warrior in the field, he was, by his excellent

Feroze Shaw
dies.
His character.



A. D. 1383.
Higer. 790.

excellent qualities, well calculated for a reign of peace. His severity to the inhabitants of Cumaoon, for the assassination of the governor of Samana, is a great blot in his reputation. But to this he, perhaps, was prompted by a religious zeal and enthusiasm: for, the persons murdered were Seids or descendants of the prophet.

His publick
works.

He reigned thirty eight years and nine months, and left many memorials of his magnificence in the land. He built fifty great sluices, forty mosques, thirty schools, twenty caravanferas, an hundred palaces, five hospitals, an hundred tombs, ten baths, ten spires, one hundred and fifty wells, one hundred bridges; and the pleasure gardens he made were without number.

SECTION XIX.

The Reign of YEAS UL DIEN, TUGHLICK SHAW, the son of Fatte Chan, and grandson of Sultan Firose Shaw.

Tughlick
Shaw mounts
the throne.

TUGHLICK SHAW having mounted the throne in the palace of Firoseabad, ordered, according to custom, the Chutba to be read, and the currency to be struck in his own name. He appointed Malleck Firose Alli, his Vizier, by the title of Chan Jehan, and confirmed Firhit ul Muluck in the government of Guzerat.

Sends a force
against his
uncle Ma-
hummud,

He soon after sent an army under Chan Jehan and Bahadre Nahir Mewali, to expel his uncle Mahummud Shaw from Sirmore, and that prince, upon the approach of the imperial army, fled to the mountains. He there took possession of a strong post, and, securing the



the wives and children of his adherents, waited to give the imperialists battle. He was however beat from post to post till he arrived at Nagracut, and shut himself up in that place. That fortress being very strong, his enemies did not think proper to besiege it, and therefore returned to Delhi.

A. D. 1388.
Higer. 790.

who takes refuge in Nagracut.

Tughlick Shaw giving reins to his youthful passions, and neglecting the affairs of state, vice, luxury and oppression began to rise up on every side. He was not blind to those misfortunes, but he mistook the cause, and admitted jealousy and mistrust within his mind. He confined and treated cruelly, his own brother, Sallar Shaw: and, his cousin Abu Bicker Shaw, having reason to dread the Sultan's resentment, fled the court, and to secure himself, stirred up a faction against him. The conspirators consisted of Malleck Rukun ul dien, the Vizier's deputy, and many other Omrahs of high repute, with all the imperial slaves, many of whom, were in the highest offices at court.

Male administration of the Sultan.

A conspiracy.

Matters being ripe for execution, the conspirators rushed into the Divan, and assassinated Malleck Mubarick Kabir, the captain general of the forces. Tughlick Shaw being thus surprized, fled by the Jumna gate. Rukun ul dien pursued him, and having taken him and Chan Jehan the Vizier, they were immediately put to death. This event happened on the twenty first of Siffer, in the year 791: Tughlick Shaw, after a reign of five months and a few days, having fallen by the effects of the folly of youth.

He is slain.



SECTION XX.

The Reign of ABU BICKER SHAW, the son of Ziffer Chan, and grandson of Firose Shaw.

A. D. 1389.
Higer. 791.
Abu Bicker
Shaw mounts
the throne.

THE conspirators having assassinated the King, raised Abu Bicker Shaw, the grandson of Firose Shaw, by a third son, to the Empire. Malleck Rukun ul dien, being appointed Vizier, took the reins of government in his own hands. But his ambition was not satisfied with that high employ. He formed schemes to cut off the new King, and to usurp the throne. Abu Bicker Shaw, having timely information of his intentions, was before hand with him, and ordered him and many of the principal slaves concerned in the conspiracy to be put to death.

An insurrec-
tion in Sama-
na.

Mahummud
Shaw,
marches from
Nagracut.
Enters Delhi.

In the mean time, the Sidda chiefs of Samana assassinated the viceroy, Malleck Sultan Shaw, the fast friend of the reigning Emperor, and sent his head to Mahummud Shaw at Nagracut. They earnestly solicited him to come and assert his right to the empire. Mahummud Shaw accordingly, having collected his friends, advanced by the way of Jallendar to Samana, and proclaiming himself King at that place, advanced with a great army towards Delhi. After some repulses, Mahummud, as we shall see in the sequel, proved victorious, and sent Abu Bicker Shaw to his grave upon the twentieth of Zihige, in the year 792, when he had reigned one year and six months.



SECTION XXI.

The Reign of NASIR UL DUNIA UL DIEN MAHUMMUD
SHAW, the son of Firose Shaw.

MAHUMMUD, as we have already seen, mounted the throne in his father's life time, in the year 789. How he was deposed and expelled by Baha ul dien and the other Omrahs, in confederacy with the Siddas of Guzerat, and the slaves of the household, and his transactions till he shut himself up in the fort of Nagra-cut, has been also related. When the chiefs of the Siddas had assassinated Malleck Sultan in Samana, Mahummud Shaw, according to their invitation, marched with great expedition from Nagra-cut, calling all his friends from Delhi. He soon found himself at the head of twenty thousand horse, with which he advanced towards the capital.

A. D. 1389.
Higer. 792.
Mahummud
Shaw.

marches from
Nagra-cut.

Upon the fifth of Ribbi ul Achir, in the year 792, he entered Delhi, and lighted at the palace of Jehan Numa. Abu Bicker Shaw, in the other quarter of the city, called Firoseabad, prepared himself for battle; and on the second of Jemmad ul Awil, the two armies engaged in the streets of Firoseabad. In the mean time Bahader Nahir, with a strong reinforcement, arrived, and joining Abu Bicker, they marched out of Firoseabad next morning, and drove Mahummud Shaw, with great slaughter, quite out of Delhi.

Is driven
from the city
with great
slaughter.

Mahummud retreated with two thousand horse only, over the Jumna; and immediately dispatched Humaioon Chan his son, and

VOL. I.

Z z

several



A. D. 1389.
Higer, 792.
He sends to
raise forces.

several Omrahs to Sammana to recruit his army. He himself, in the mean time, remained in the town of Tillasar upon the banks of the Gang. Having experienced from first to last, that the slaves of Firose Shaw were his declared enemies, he gave orders to plunder all their estates in the neighbouring country, and to slay them wherever they should be found. The Zemindars fell upon some thousands, who had possessions in other parts of the empire, and massacred them; while the farmers in general, disgusted with Abu Bicker's government, which had been very oppressive, withheld their rents, and lifted themselves under Mahummud Shaw.

Being joined
by some
Omrahs of
note, he
marches to
Delhi,

In the mean time, the viceroy of Moulton, Chawas ul Muluck Suba of Baha, Rai Sir, and many Omrahs of note having joined Mahummud with their forces, he collected, in a few days, an army of fifty thousand horse, made the usual appointments in the empire to please his friends, and advanced, a second time, towards Delhi. Abu Bicker Shaw had remained inactive in that city, ever since his late victory. He, however, drew out his army at a village called Hindali to oppose Mahummud, and was so fortunate as to come off victorious once more. He drove Mahummud Shaw towards Tillasar, but contented himself with pursuing him three crores, and with taking his baggage, and then returned to his capital.

Humaion
Chan defeat-
ed.

Humaion Chan, not many days after the battle of Hindali, with the troops he had raised at Samana, made another attempt upon the capital, but succeeded no better than his father, being defeated at Paniput, and obliged to retreat towards Samana. But after all these successes, Abu Bicker Shaw thought it unsafe to leave the capital, being suspicious of a faction in the city, in favour of Mahummud Shaw. Having at length punished some of the most disaffected, he ventured to march about twenty crores towards Tillasar, where Mahummud Shaw was again collecting an army.

The



The latter having, by this time, concerted measures with his faction in the city, left the body of his army, with all his baggage, at Tillafar, and advanced with four thousand chosen horse, towards Abu Bicker. When Abu Bicker had drawn up his army, Mahummud made a quick motion to the left, and passing the enemy's line, pushed forward to the capital. He there engaged the troops of Abu Bicker who guarded the walls, and having set fire to the Budoon gate, forced his way into the city. He immediately entered the imperial palace, whither the citizens flocked to pay him their respects.

But Abu Bicker Shaw, having closely pursued Mahummud, arrived the same day before the city; and having forced the guards which Mahummud Shaw had placed at the gates, advanced to the palace, and drove Mahummud Shaw, whose troops had dispersed themselves, quite out of the city. He was obliged to retreat again to Tillafar, where he joined his army, having lost the major part of his detachment in the action.

Some time having thus passed, without any decisive action, Mubushir Hagib, chief of the imperial slaves, known by the title of Islam Chan, disgusted with Abu Bicker, wrote to Mahummud, that if he would make another attempt upon the city, he would support him with the greatest part of the slaves, who were under his direction. Abu Bicker hearing that Mahummud was again in motion, and having also discovered the disaffection of the slaves and others in his army, shamefully abandoned the capital, and fled with a small retinue to Mewat.

Mahummud Shaw, in the month of Ramzan, entered Delhi and ascended the imperial throne. He gave the vizarit to Islam Chan,

Z z 2

to



A. D. 1399. Higer. 793. to whom he principally owed his restoration. When he found himself firmly established, he ordered all the elephants which belonged to the slaves of Firose Shaw, to be taken from them, and converted to his own use. The slaves, enraged at this injustice, fled the city that night, and hastened to join Abu Bicker. Mahummud, upon this desertion, turned out a few who remained, and ordered them upon pain of death, never to appear in the city, where they had acquired such dangerous influence. Notwithstanding of this decree, many slaves, unwilling to leave Delhi, concealed themselves: a search was ordered to be made, and such as were found, were massacred. Some of those poor wretches, upon this occasion, cried out for mercy, affirming that they were originally Turks. They were, upon this, ordered to pronounce the word Gurrigurri, by which they were immediately distinguished. All who sounded it with the accent of Hindostan, were put to death.

Mahummud
expels the
slaves.

Mahummud Shaw, after having expelled the slaves, began to recruit his army, and sent Humaioon Chan his son, with a considerable force against Abu Bicker. When this army arrived at Kotluh, Abu Bicker, by advice of Bahadr Nahir, surprized Humaioon Chan in his camp. The prince, however, exerted his utmost efforts in opposing the enemy, being gallantly supported by Islam Chan, drove Abu Bicker, after a brave resistance, quite off the field. Mahummud Shaw marched at the same time, with great expedition, towards Mewat, where Abu Bicker Shaw, seeing no hopes left, surrendered himself, and was sent prisoner to the fort of Merat, where he died some years after.

Humaioon,
marching
against Abu
Bicker,
is attacked in
his camp.

Abu Bicker
surrenders
himself.

Rebellion in
Guzerat.

Mahummud Shaw, returning to Delhi, received advices that Malleck Muffirru Sultani, governor of Guzerat, rebelled. Ziffer Chan was immediately dispatched with an army to suppress the rebel-



rebellion; but for the particulars of this expedition, we must refer the reader to the history of the province of Guzerat *.

A. D. 1301.
Higer. 794.

In the year 794, intelligence was brought to Delhi, that Rai Narsingh, Sirvadhone of Rhator, and Bireban of Bessu, chiefs of the Hindoos, had rose in arms against the Empire. Mahummud ordered Islam Chan, with a considerable force against Narsingh, the most powerful of the insurgents. Narsingh was defeated, made peace, and attended his conqueror to Delhi. The other two chiefs were subjugated at the same time.

Some Hindoo
chiefs revolt,

Islam
expels the
and are red-
ced.

The Zemindars of Attava, upon account of some grievance, rose at the same time in arms, and ravaged Bittaram and the adjacent Pergunnahs. The Sultan marched against them in person, and chastised them. The fort of Attava was levelled with the ground, and Mahummud took the rout of Kinnoge and Tillasar, in the last of which cities, he built a fort, which, from his own name, he called Mahummud-abad.

Rebellion in
Attava quell-
ed.

Advice came to the Sultan from Delhi, that Islam Chan the Vizier, was preparing to fly to Lahore and Moultan, to kindle in those provinces the flames of rebellion. Mahummud hastened to the capital, and charged Islam Chan with his treasonable intentions. The Vizier absolutely denied the fact, but Jaju, a Hindoo and his own nephew, swore falsely against him. The Sultan being either convinced of his Vizier's guilt, or instigated by a jealousy of his power, condemned him to die. Chaja Jehan, who was perhaps a no small promoter of the Vizier's fall, was advanced to his office. Muckurrib ul Muluck was, at the same time, appointed governor of Mahummud-abad.

The Vizier
falsely ac-
cused of
treason.

Is put to
death.

* Our author's second volume in the original Persian, treats of the particular history of all the provinces of Hindostan.



A. D. 1392.
Higer. 795.
The Hindoo
chiefs rise
again in
arms.

In the year 795, Sirvadhone of Rhator, and Bireban of Biffu, appeared in arms; and Muckurrib was ordered, with the troops at Mahummud-abad, against them.

The Sultan
falls sick.

Sultan Mahummud, about this time, marched to Mewat, to quell some disturbances in that place. Upon his return to Mahummud-abad, he was taken ill of a dangerous fever, which rendered him delirious for some days. When he was in this condition, news was brought, that Bahadr Nahir* had plundered the country to the gates of Delhi. The Sultan, though far from being recovered of his illness, hastened to Mewat. Bahadr Nahir, who headed the rebels, drew up his army at Kottilah, and gave Mahummud battle; but he was defeated, and fled to Jidger.

Defeats Ba-
hadr Nahir.

The Sultan
dies.

Mahummud, after this victory, returned to Mahummud-abad, and in the month of Ribbi ul awil of the year 796, sent his son Humaioon Chan, to crush Shicha Gicker, who had rebelled, and possessed himself of Lahore. But before the prince had left Delhi, news was brought to him of his father's decease; for the Sultan having relapsed into his former disorder, expired on the 17th of Ribbi ul awil, at Mahummud-abad. He reigned about six years and seven months, and his body was deposited at Delhi, with his fathers.

Humaioon
ascends the
throne.

Dies.

Sultan Mahummud being mixed with the dead, his son Humaioon Chan ascended the throne, by the name of Secunder Shaw. He continued or confirmed all his father's officers; but being in a few days taken with a violent disorder, he went the way of his fathers, after a reign of forty-five days.

* An adherent of Abu Bicker.



THE HISTORY OF HINDOSTAN.

SECTION XXII.

The Reign of NASIR UL DIEN MAMOOD SHAW, the son of Mahummud Shaw.

WHEN Secunder Shaw yielded to the power of his fate, violent disputes arose among the Omrahs, about the succession. They at last fixed upon Mamood, an infant son of Sultan Mahummud, whom they placed upon the throne, by the name of Nasir ul dien Mamood Shaw; while Chaja Jehan remained in the Vizariat, and absolute government of the state. The title of Muckirrib Chan was conferred upon Muckirrib ul Muluck, with the high employ of Amir ul Omrah, or Captain-General. Sadit Chan was appointed Barbeck *, Saring Chan governor of Debalpoor, and Dowlat Chan Debire, nominated to the office of Aziz Mumalick †.

The apparent debility of the Empire, arising from the King's minority and dissensions of the Omrahs, encouraged all the Hindoos around to kindle the flames of rebellion; particularly those of the eastern provinces. Chaja Jehan, upon this occasion, assumed the title of Sultan Shirki ‡, and proceeded towards Behar, with a great army. He soon reduced that country to obedience, and having at the same time, forced the Prince of Bengal to pay him the customary tribute, he returned, and fixed his residence at Jionpoor.

While Chaja Jehan thus established himself, in opposition to his master, in the East, Saring Chan began to form an independency in the West. Having, as Suba of Debalpoor, collected the troops of the province of Moulton, and the north-west division of the empire, he advanced against Shicha Gicker, who waited for him at Adjodin, about twelve crores from Lahore. A battle immediately ensued, and the Gickers being defeated, were obliged to take refuge among

* Lord of the Audience.

† King of the East.

‡ Representative of the provinces.



A. D. 1394.
Higer. 797.

the mountains of Jimbo. Saring Chan, after this victory, left his brother Adil Chan in the government of Lahore, and returned himself to Debalpoor.

The Sultan
marches to
Biana and
Gualier.

Sultan Mamood this year, having left Delhi in charge of Muckirrib Chan, marched towards Gualier, and Biana, accompanied by Sadit Chan and many of the chief Omrahs. When the King had arrived in the neighbourhood of Gualier, Mubarick Chan, the son of Malleck Raja, Mullu Eckbal Chan the brother of Raja Saring Chan, and Malleck Alla ul dien, conspired against the life of Sadit Chan. But Sadit having timely information of the plot, slew Mubarick Chan and Malleck Alla ul dien, while Eckbal escaped to Delhi. Though the conspiracy was thus quashed, the confusions which were the consequences of it, obliged the Sultan to return to the capital, without prosecuting the scheme of reducing those territories to obedience.

The gates of
Delhi shut
against him.

The distractions in the empire began now to multiply exceedingly. The Sultan arriving in the neighbourhood of Delhi, Muckirrib Chan came out to pay his respects. But having on his way understood, that Sadit Chan had sworn vengeance against him, for affording protection to Mullu Eckbal Chan, he fled back to the city, and shutting the gates against the Prince, prepared to make a resolute defence. The city in short was besieged for three months, till the King being assured that the war was commenced and continued on account of Sadit Chan, accommodated matters with Muckirrib, and in the month of Mohirrim 797, was admitted into Delhi.

He goes
over to the
besieged.

Another Sul-
tan set up by
Sadit Chan.

Muckirrib, encouraged by the coming over of his Prince, marched the next day out of the city, with all his force, against Sadit Chan; but he was beat back with great loss. The rains had now come on, and it being impossible for Sadit Chan to keep the field, he struck his tents, and marched into Firose-abad. He immediately sent for Nuserit



Nuferit Chan, the son of Fatte Chan, and grandson of Firose Shaw, A. D. 1393.
Higer. 796. from Mewat, and set him up in opposition to Mamood, by the title of Nasir ul dien Nuferit Shaw. Under the name of this prince Sadit Chan began to manage the affairs of the Sultanit.

But a new faction breaking out in his government, disconcerted his measures. The slaves of Firose Shaw, disgusted with his behaviour towards them, prevailed upon the keepers of the elephants to join them. They forcibly placed Nuferit Shaw upon an elephant, advanced against Sadit Chan, and drove him quite out of the city of Firose-abad, before he had time to prepare for his own defence. To avoid one danger, the unfortunate Sadit fell into another; for having sought protection under Muckirrib Chan, he was by him put to death. A faction expels Sadit Chan from Firose-abad.
He is slain.

The misfortunes of the state daily encreased. The Omrahs of Firose-abad, and of some of the provinces, espoused the cause of Nuferit Chan. Those of Delhi, and others, supported the title of Mamood. The whole empire fell into a state of anarchy, confusion, and distraction. A civil war was kindled in every corner, and a thing unheard of before, two Kings in arms against one another, resided in one capital. Things however remained in this unfortunate situation for three years, with a surprising equality on both sides; for if one monarch's party had at any time a superiority over the other, it was in singularity of misfortunes. It was not a state of war, but a continued battle between the two cities: Thousands were killed almost every day, and the place of the slain was constantly supplied by reinforcements from different parts of the empire. Some of the Subas of the provinces took no part in this civil war. They hoped to see the empire so weakened by public calamities, that they themselves might become independant; and to lay a foundation for their future power, they withheld the customary revenues. The uncommon misfortunes of the empire.



A. D. 1396.
Higer. 798.
Transactions
in the north-
west provin-
ces.

In the year 798, Saring Chan, governor of Debalpoor, having some differences with Chizer Chan, governor of Moulton, made war upon him. After several engagements with various success, victory declared for Saring. He immediately seized Moulton, became very powerful, and in the year following, advanced with a great army to Samana, which he reduced to his obedience. Nufirit Chan dispatched Tatar Chan, Suba of Panniput, and Malleck Almas, with an army against him. They engaged Saring on the first of Mohorrim, in the year 799, gave him a signal overthrow, and obliged him to fly to Moulton.

The grand-
son of Amir
Timur passes
the Indus,

Saring Chan received in that city, intelligence that Mirza Pier Mahummud Jehangire, the grandson of Amir Timur *, had built a bridge over the Sind †, and that, having crossed that river, he invested Outch. Saring immediately dispatched Malleck Tagge ul dien, his Naib, with other Omrahs, and the best part of his army, to reinforce Malleck Ali, Naib to the governor of Outch. Pier Mahummud hearing of this army, advanced to the Bea, fell upon them by surprize, just as they had crossed that river, defeated and drove them back into the stream; so that more were drowned than fell by the sword. A few of the discomfited army made the best of their way to Moulton.

Takes
Moulton.

Pier Mahummud kept close at the heels of the runaways, and obliged Saring Chan to shut himself up in Moulton. After a siege of six months, he was obliged, for want of provisions, to surrender at discretion; and being imprisoned, with all his army, Mahummud took possession of the city. Saring, in a few days, found means to escape: but the country remained in subjection to the Moguls.

Transactions
at Delhi.

But to return to the transactions at Delhi. Mullu Eckbal Chan being disgusted with Mamood, deserted him. He sent a message to

* Tamerlane.

† The Indus.

Nufirit



Nuferit Shaw, to desire leave to join him with his party. This offer was very readily accepted; they met, went to the palace of Seri, and, upon the Koran, swore mutual friendship, at the tomb of Chaja Cuttub ul dien Kaki. During these transactions, Mamood with Muckirrib remained in the old city.

A. D. 1197.
Higer. 799.

The perfidious Eckbal, about three days after his desertion, quarrelled with Nuferit Shaw, and not regarding his oath, began to form a conspiracy against him. Nuferit Shaw being informed of the plot, found himself constrained to quit the palace of Seri. The traitor fell upon him in his retreat, and took all his elephants, treasure and baggage. The unfortunate prince, being in no condition to keep the field, fled to his Vizier at Panniput.

Eckbal
Chan's per-
fidy.

Eckbal took immediately possession of Firoseabad. His power daily increased, and he now employed it to expel Mamood and Muckirrib from the old city. At length, by the mediation of some Omrahs, peace was concluded between the parties. But Eckbal, peculiarly perfidious, broke through all the sacred ties of the treaty; and setting upon Muckirrib in his own house, by surprize, slew him. He immediately seized the young Sultan, and left him nothing but his life and the name of Emperor.

A treaty be-
tween him
and Sultan
Mamood.

Eckbal, in the same year, marched from Delhi with Sultan Mamood, against Nuferit Shaw, and Tatar Chan at Panniput. Tatar Chan, leaving his elephants and baggage in the fort, passed, by forced marches, the army of Eckbal, arrived before Delhi and invested it. Eckbal trusting to the strength he left in Delhi, advanced and attacked Panniput, and took it the third

Ruins the af-
fairs of Nufe-
rit Shaw.



A. D. 1398.
Higer. 800.

third day, by escalade. He then hastened back to Delhi, and Tatar Chan having failed in his attempt upon that place, fled to his father in Guzerat. Eckbal entering the city, began to regulate the government, which had fallen into the utmost confusion. In the mean time, to compleat the miseries of the unhappy city and empire, news arrived, that Amir Timur had crossed the Sind, with an intention to conquer Hindostan.

END of the FIRST VOLUME.

